



Securities Repo User Guide

Oracle Banking Treasury Management

Release 14.7.0.0.0

Part No. F72699-01

November 2022

Copyright

Copyright: 2007, 2022

Copyright Holder: Oracle

Product Name: Oracle Financial Software Services, Oracle park, off western express highway, Goregaun (east) mumbai, Maharashtra 400 063, India, Phone Number - 91-22 6718 3000, 91-22 6718 3001. www.oracle.com/financial-services

Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS: Oracle programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, delivered to U.S. Government end users are “commercial computer software” pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation of the programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, shall be subject to license terms and license restrictions applicable to the programs. No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate failsafe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure its safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or de-compilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited. The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information on content, products and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services.

Contents

Preface	1
Introduction	1
Audience	1
Definitions	2
Documentation Accessibility	2
Related Documents	2
Introduction to Repo	4
Repo	4
Reverse Repo	5
Properties of Repo	5
Price of a Repo	6
Typical Market Participants	7
Overview of Repo	8
Introduction	8
Automatic Deal Upload	8
Architectural Advantages	9
Product Definition Facility	9
Advantage of Defining a product	9
Automatic Processing Features	9
Settlement of Repo Deals	10
Roll Over Deals	10
Products	10

Securities Repo Product attributes	10
Process a SR Deal	54
Features of the Contract Details screen	54
Capture Details of Repo Contract	56
Repo Details.	119
Specify Details of Parties Involved in Repo Block	121
Repo Process	123
Securities Pledged preference - Move to Collateral portfolio	123
Securities Pledged preference - Block Securities	124
Repo Messaging	124
Processing Repos on Future Dated Holdings	125
Reverse Repo Block	126
Reverse Repo Process	127
Authorize a Contract	128
Multilevel Authorization of a Contract.	129
Summary Details of Repo Contract.	129
Margin Product for a REPO	131
Securities Margin Process	135
Securities Repo Margin Processing Summary	141
Margin Message Details	142
Margin Transaction Query.	144
Rate Fixing Process for Repo	147
Treasury Branch Parameter Maintenance.	147
Treasury Rate Fixing Maintenance.	148
Treasury Interest Class Definition	148
Securities Repo Product Definition	148
Securities Repo Contract Online.	148
Build Rate Fixing Schedules.	148
Treasury Manual Rate Fixing	149
Amend Securities Repo Transactions	154
Value Dated Amendment	154
Security Repo VAMI.	156

Upload Deals of Amendment	169
Reverse and Rebooking Contracts	171
Securities Repo Payment Input	171
Process Repayments	187
Define Schedules for Repayment	187
Mode of Liquidation	188
Liquidate Back Valued Schedules During Initiation	189
Liquidate Back Valued Schedules During Initiation	189
When the Repayment Schedule Date is a Holiday	189
Move Schedules Forward or Backward	190
Move Schedule Dates Across the Month	190
Specify the Holiday Currency	190
When the Repayment Schedule Date is a Holiday	190
Cascade Schedules	190
Roll over a deal	190
Specify Rollover for a Product	191
Mode of Rollover (Manual or Automatic)	192
Impact of Liquidation Mode on Rollover	192
Roll over a Contract Manually	192
Specify the Maturity Details	193
Automatic Processing	193
Automatic Events in the Lifecycle of a Deal	193
Begin of Day Processes	193
End of Day Processes	194
Process During Beginning of Day	194
Process During End of Day	194
Process for Holidays	194
Initiate a Future Value Dated Deal	195
Process an Automatic Repayment	195
Advices Generated for a Repayment	196
Automatic Rollover of a Deal	196
Advices for Rollover	197
Automatic Status Changes	197

Accrual of ICCB Components	199
SGEN Messages Generation.	200
RFR Enabling for SGEN	200
Contract Level Message Generation.	203
Risk Free Rates	205
Introduction	205
Define Rate codes for Risk Free rates	206
Risk Free Rates	206
Treasury Interest Class Definition.	208
Securities Repo Product.	214
Securities Repo Contract.	216
Securities Repo Value Dated changes	220
Security Repo Manual Payments.	221
Lifecycle process Impact.	221
Swift Messaging	221
Contract Advices.	222
Intraday Deals	222
Back dated and Future dated Contract Booking.	222
Liquidate back date schedules	222
Interest Accrual.	222
Interest Schedules	222
Interest Liquidation.	223
Back dated and future dated Value dated amendments	223
Prepayments and withdrawals	223
Roll Over.	223
Liquidation Delay	223
List of Glossary - RFR.	223
Securities Financial Transaction Regulation	224
Introduction	224
Static Type Maintenance	224
Treasury Customer Additional Maintenance.	226
Securities Instrument Definition	228

Securities Repo Contract Online	229
List of Glossary - SFTR.	230
Printing Subsidiary General Ledger Form- Repo and Reverse Repo Deals.	231
Introduction	231
Process SGL Maintenance.....	231
List of Glossaries - Printing Subsidiary General Ledger Form - Repo and Reverse Repo Details	233
Annexure A - Accounting Entries and Advices for SR Module	234
Accounting entries for SR	235
SR Events.	235
Amount Tags	236
Accounting Roles.	237
Event-wise Accounting Entries and Advices	239
SR Reverse Repo with True Discounted Interest	239
Cash Margin	247
SR Repo with Fixed Discounted Interest	248
SR Reverse Repo – Fixed Bearing Interest	252
REVN: Rate Revision.....	256
SR Repo with Fixed Bearing Interest.....	256
Multi Media Support.	261
Entries for contracts liquidated with Previous Year Adjustment option.....	263
Annexure B- Sample Advices.	264
GMRA Advice.....	264
Money Market Loan Contract Amendment Advice	265
Money Market Deposit Contract Confirmation Advice	266
Money Market Loan Contract Confirmation Advice	266
Credit Advice	267
Debit Advice	268
Rollover Advice For a Placement	268
Fixed Contract Confirmation.....	270
Deposit Interest Payment Advice	270
Payment Message	271

Credit Advice.....	271
Market-Side Trade Confirmation	272
Annexure C - Error Codes and Message for Securities	273
Error Codes and Messages.....	273
Function ID - Glossary	276

1. Preface

1.1 Introduction

- This manual is designed to help acquaint the user with the Repo Module of Oracle Banking Treasury Management.
- It provides an overview to the module and takes the user through the various steps involved in maintaining securities, portfolios, and deals.
- It also covers all the corporate actions that the user can perform on Securities. Place the cursor on the relevant field and press the F1 key to fetch the field-specific Information.

1.2 Audience

This manual is intended for the following User/User Roles

Table 1.1: User Roles

Role	Function
Back office data entry Clerks	Input functions for deals/queries
Back office Managers/Officers	Authorization functions/queries
Product Managers	Product definition and authorization
End of Day Operators	Processing during End of Day/ beginning of day
Financial Controller/Product Managers	Generation of queries/reports

1.3 Definitions

Table 1.2: Terms

Term	Definition
Seller	Collateral-provider, cash-taker (borrower).
Buyer	Collateral-taker, cash-provider (lender).
Purchase	Sale of assets at the start of a repo.
Repurchase	Repurchase of assets at the end of a repo.
Purchase date	Value date: the date on which cash and assets are actually exchanged.
Repurchase date	Maturity date: the date on which cash and assets are returned to their original owners
Purchase price	Cash value paid by the buyer of assets to the seller on the purchase date.
Repurchase price	Cash value paid by the seller of assets to the buyer on the repurchase date: equal to the purchase price plus a return on the use of the cash over the term of the repo.
Collateral	Assets sold in a repo on the purchase date.
Repo rate	Percentage per annum rate of return paid by the seller for the use of the cash over the term of a repurchase agreement and included in the repurchase price.

1.4 Documentation Accessibility

For information about Oracle's commitment to accessibility, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program website at: <http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=docacc>

1.5 Related Documents

The user may need to refer to any or all of the User Manuals while working on the Securities module:

- Procedures User Manual
- Brokerage User Manual
- Messaging User Manual
- Products User Manual
- Settlement User Manual
- Interest User Manual
- Charges User Manual
- Tax User Manual

- User Defined User Manual

List of Topics

This user manual is organized as follows:

Table 1.3: Topics

Topics	Description
Overview of Securities Domain	Explains the overview of the Securities Repo domain.
Overview of Repo	Overview of Repo provides the details that the user needs to maintain in the Securities Repo module to process Repo and Reverse Repo deals.
RFR	RFR for Securities Repo provide the complete overview of the risk free rates which might be applied for the security contract.
Printing Subsidiary General Ledger Form- Repo and Reverse Details	Printing Subsidiary General Ledger Form - Repo and Reverse Repo Deals explains the process to track and maintain the subsidiary general ledger form and Security Repo Payment.
Annexure A - Accounting Entries and Advices	Annexure A - Accounting Entries and Advices for the Securities Repo module lists the suggested event-wise accounting entries and advices for the Securities module.
Annexure B - Sample Advices	Annexure B - Sample Advices for the Securities Repo module lists the advice samples for reference.
Annexure C - Error Codes and Messages for Securities	Error codes and Messages for Securities Repo lists the error messages that one may encounter, while working with Oracle Banking Treasury Management.
Function ID - Glossary	Function ID Glossary has alphabetical listing of Function/Screen ID used in the module with page references for quick navigation.

2. Introduction to Repo

This topic contains the following subtopics:

- 1) [Repo](#)
- 2) [Reverse Repo](#)
- 3) [Properties of Repo](#)
- 4) [Price of a Repo](#)
- 5) [Typical Market Participants](#)

2.1 Repo

Repurchase Agreements or Repo is a short term borrowing for dealers in government securities. Repo is typically used for short term capital needs and works similar to a collateralized loan. Usually, a dealer sells securities to an investor and buys back at a slightly higher rate. This difference is the price is the interest rate or repo rate. For the party lending/pledging the security, it is a repo, and it is a reverse repo for the other party

Let us understand the reason why one needs to enter into a repo agreement with the following example:

- Bank A wants to raise cash today to invest this amount into a business and may return the cash tomorrow. It can enter an agreement with a bank B where bank B can lend the required cash to bank A for a day. Bank A expects to borrow cash from Bank B. Therefore, Bank A is the cash borrower.
- Bank B lends cash to the Bank A. Therefore, Bank B is the cash lender.
- Bank B now expects the cash to be returned within a day. Bank B in this instance is known as the cash lender and bank A is the cash borrower.
- Bank B is now exposed to the risk that Bank A might not return the borrowed cash before or at the end of the transaction.
- Bank B, the cash lender, expects some form of collateral such as securities in return. This collateral is required to protect against the risk that Bank A might not return the cash within the required time. This is secured financing by using collateral to mitigate the risks that the counterparty might default.
- As a result, the security has now reduced the risk of bank B as it can sell the security in the worst-case scenario. Bank B can also sell the security at a higher price to earn a profit.
- Subsequently, Bank A will now be charged a lower interest rate. This rate is known as the repo rate and it is dependent on a number of factors such as the liquidity of the security.
- Bank B can also cut the value of the security by applying a haircut (usually a percentage) to mitigate against the counterparty risk or the risk that the value of the security might decline.

To Summarize:

- Repos are short-term lending agreements. Their maturity can be a day long.
- Repos are secured by collateral such as securities.

- A haircut is applied to mitigate against the counterparty risk and to mitigate against a decline in the value of the collateral.
- One party sells securities and borrows cash and commits to buying the security back at a future date. The buying back part of the agreement gave them the name of **repurchase agreement**.
- The borrower is said to have entered into a repo agreement. The borrower can also repurchase the securities on demand.

“A repo is a loan secured against collateral”

2.2 Reverse Repo

A reverse repo is a repo transaction from the lender's perspective. Therefore, for the lender of the cash, the repurchase agreement is known as the reverse repo. In this example, the bank B is entering into a reverse repo transaction as it is lending the cash.

	Repo	Reverse Repo
Participant	Borrower Seller Cash receiverLender	Buyer Cash provider
Near leg	Sells securities	Buys securities
Far leg	Buys securities	Sells securities

2.3 Properties of Repo

- Details of the cash borrower, who is also providing securities
- Details of the cash lender, who is also taking the securities
- Nominal value to be borrowed
- Start date to borrow the cash
- Maturity date to return the cash and buy back the securities
- Haircut to be applied to the value of the security, including initial margin and collateral management details
- Repo rate is the interest rate that the borrower needs to pay to the seller for the use of cash

2.4 Price of a Repo

The repurchase price is simply the purchase price plus the repo interest where the purchase price is the cash paid by the cash lender, including any accrued interest. The user had to consider if there is a haircut or initial margin involved.

The repurchase price is simply:

Repo Price = Purchase Price + Repo Interest

* Purchase Price = Nominal Price * Dirty Price

* Repo Interest = (Repo rate for the days based on day count convention)

Repo interest is calculated on the purchase price

For Example:

Nominal Value: £5'000

Dirty Price: 1.5

Repo Rate: 1%

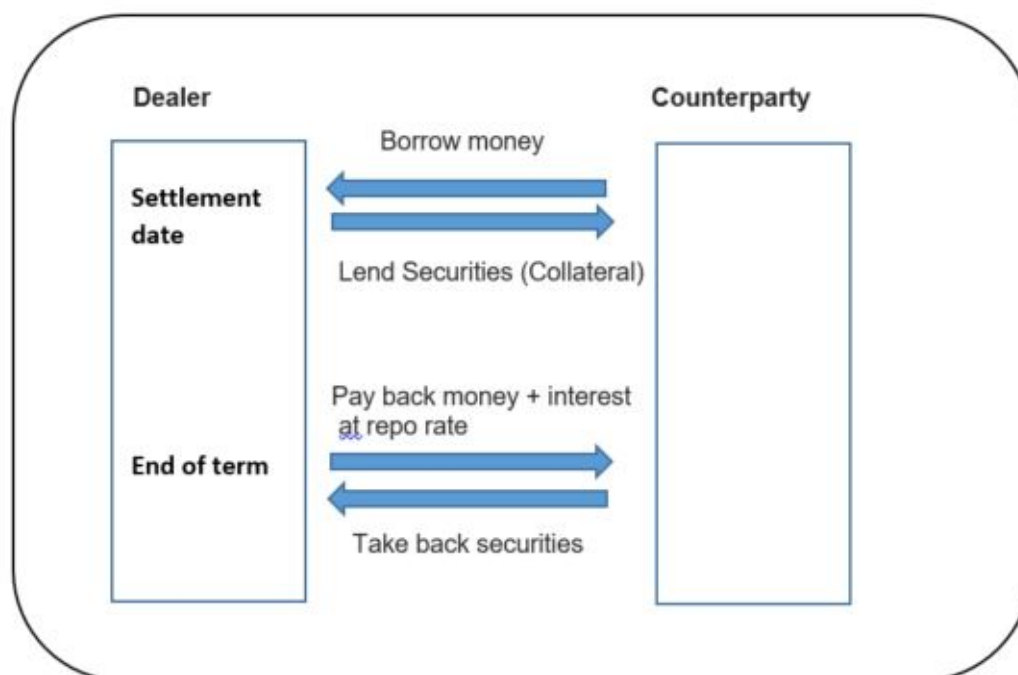
There is no initial margin/haircut, hence the purchase price is simply the full cash market value of the bond:

Purchase Price = £7'500 (=5000*1.5)

Repo Interest = £75 (£7'500*0.01)

Repo Price = £7'575 (= £7'500+£75)

The counterparty earns interest on the transaction in the form of the higher price of selling the securities back to the dealer. The counterparty also gets the temporary use of the securities.



The repo market is pivotal to the efficient working of almost all financial markets. Its importance reflects the wide range and fundamental nature of repos' applications:

- Providing an efficient source of short-term funding

- Providing a more resilient money market
- Providing a secure and flexible home for short-term investment
- Facilitating central bank operations
- Financing leveraged investors and covering short investors
- Hedging primary debt issuance
- Supporting corporate bond investors
- Ensuring liquidity in the secondary debt-market

2.5 Typical Market Participants

Cash Providers	Securities Providers
Money Market Mutual Funds Insurance Companies Municipalities Central Banks Securities Lenders Commercial Banks	Securities Lenders Hedge Funds / Corporations Levered Accounts Central Banks Commercial Banks Insurance Companies

3. Overview of Repo

This topic contains the following subtopics:

- 1) [Introduction](#)
- 2) [Product Definition Facility](#)
- 3) [Products](#)
- 4) [Features of the Contract Details screen](#)
- 5) [Capture Details of Repo Contract](#)
- 6) [Repo Details](#)
- 7) [Repo Process](#)
- 8) [Reverse Repo Block](#)
- 9) [Authorize a Contract](#)
- 10) [Summary Details of Repo Contract](#)
- 11) [Securities Margin Process](#)
- 12) [Securities Repo Margin Processing Summary](#)
- 13) [Margin Message Details](#)
- 14) [Margin Transaction Query](#)
- 15) [Rate Fixing Process for Repo](#)
- 16) [Amend Securities Repo Transactions](#)
- 17) [Security Repo VAMI](#)
- 18) [Upload Deals of Amendment](#)
- 19) [Securities Repo Payment Input](#)
- 20) [Process Repayments](#)
- 21) [Roll over a deal](#)
- 22) [Specify Rollover for a Product](#)
- 23) [Automatic Processing](#)
- 24) [Automatic Events in the Lifecycle of a Deal](#)

3.1 Introduction

Securities repurchase agreements (referred to as Repos) are entered into to raise money, or meet your Central Bank statutes. The users use reverse Repo transactions to invest short-term surplus funds, at minimal risk. The Securities Repurchase module of Oracle Banking Treasury supports processing of REPO (borrowing) and Reverse REPO (placement) transactions captured by the front office. OBTR supports external margin processing for securities and cash margin call and Repricing of the Nominal amount when the collateral value goes up/down. The buyer calls for variation margin from the seller to rebalance cash and collateral and vice versa based on their agreement.

3.1.1 Automatic Deal Upload

The cornerstone of this module is the Deal Upload facility. With this facility, the user can automatically upload the deals captured in your dealing room system. On upload, the user can enrich the deals with additional information relating to accounting and messaging (such as interest accrual, brokerage, tax, rollover, customer advice generation

details, etc.). This information determines how deals are handled by the automatic processes that the user execute. Processing, thus, requires minimal manual intervention and is efficient.

3.1.2 Architectural Advantages

In architecture, Oracle Banking Treasury Management is modular yet integrated. Front-end modules such as Securities Repo function around a Core consisting of the Security Management System, the Limits Service, etc. This architecture eliminates replication of commonly accessed information in every module. Information that is common to several modules is maintained in the systems' Core (for example, currency information). This is accessed by front-end modules such as MM, SR, etc. The architecture, thus, ensures that all front-end modules use reliable and consistent data drawn from the Corer. Oracle Banking Treasury Managements' architecture also ensures that constantly monitor, real-time, your exposure. Crucial services such as Limits reside at the Core of Oracle Banking Treasury Management. This means that your liability towards a customer is tracked real-time across front-end modules.

3.2 Product Definition Facility

A central feature of the front-end modules of Oracle Banking Treasury Management is the product definition facility. This feature drastically reduces marketing time, allowing the bank to focus on and take advantage of the market opportunities.

3.2.1 Advantage of Defining a product

The product definition facility is a one-time effort. When defining a Repurchase as a product, specify (amongst other details):

- The tenor
- The rate of interest
- The repayment schedules

Securities Pledged option Collateral Preference

- The tax details
- The accounting entries to be passed
- The advice to be generated

The user need not specify these details every time a deal is entered. The product definition facility thus reduces the time required to capture a deal.

3.2.2 Automatic Processing Features

Oracle Banking Treasury Management completely automates and tracks all the events in the lifecycle of a Repo deal. It

- Generates deal tickets
- Accrues interest
- Liquidates due schedules
- Transfer the pledged/Received Securities to the respective portfolio:
- Mature's contracts due for maturity

- Rolls over deals according to your specifications
- Automatically generates the specified messages and advice

Using Oracle Banking Treasury Management, process Repo deals with fixed, floating, or period interest rates and various interest application methods. Also, define bullet schedules for all components. Oracle Banking Treasury Management allows the user to define brokerage on a cumulative or slab basis for each currency. Automate, liquidation of brokerage according to the preferences defined for the mentioned broker.

When defining a product in the SR module, specify the advice and messages generated at different events (such as interest liquidation and rollover) in the life cycle of deals involving it. Once an event defined for message generation occurs in a deal, the system automatically generates the advice or notices in the media specified. Configure the format and the contents of the advice to suit your requirement.

3.2.3 Settlement of Repo Deals

All scheduled component and maturity settlements are handled automatically in Oracle Banking Treasury Management by calling the Settlement and Messaging sub-systems. Further, generate, online, all payment and Securities transfer messages to correspondent banks/custodian together with related settlement accounting entries. In keeping with its flexible design, Oracle Banking Treasury Management offers the user the option to process maturities manually.

3.2.4 Roll Over Deals

The Securities Repo module provides an extensive feature for rollover of contracts on maturity. The rollovers might be with or without interest, with the option to net withholding tax on the rollover.

3.3 Products

This topic contains following subtopics:

- 1) [Securities Repo Product attributes](#)
- 2) [Process a SR Deal](#)

3.3.1 Securities Repo Product attributes

This topic provides the instructions to process securities Repo product definition screen.

1. On Homescreen, specify **SRDPRMNT** in the text box, and click next arrow.

STEP RESULT: **Security Repo Product Definition** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.1: Securities Repo Product Definition

2. On **Security Product Definition** screen, specify the fields.

For more information on fields, refer [Table 3.1: Securities Repo Product Definition - Field Description](#)

In the Product Definition screen, enter the basic information about a product like the Product Code, the Description, etc. Information relating to specific attributes of a product can be defined in subsequent screens. For further information on the generic attributes the user can define for a product, please refer the following Oracle Banking Treasury Management User Manuals under Modularity:

- Product Definition
- Interest
- Charges and Fees
- Tax
- User Defined Fields
- Settlement

Table 3.1: Securities Repo Product Definition - Field Description

Field	Description
Product Code	Enter a unique code to identify the product throughout the module. NOTE: This code must be four Characters. The user can follow his conventions for devising this code.
Product Description	This description is associated with the product for Information retrieval purposes.
Product Type	A product that is defined can belong to either of the following types: • Repo • Reverse Repo
Description	The description of the selected product type is displayed.

Field	Description
Slogan	Click the next icon to invoke the free format text. Enter the Slogan description to be associated with the product. This slogan is printed on all the advices that are sent to the customer for a deal involving this product.
Product Group	Click the search icon and select the Product Group details as required from the list of values displayed.
Product Group Description	The description of the selected product group is displayed.
Start Date	The Start Date for this product is specified in this field.
End Date	The End Date for this product is specified in this field
Remarks	Click the next icon to invoke the free format text. A window is displayed in which the user can enter information about the product intended for your banks' internal reference.

3. On **Securities Repo Product** Screen, click **Accounting Roles**.

The Accounting Roles screen is used to define accounting roles for the product created. The user can map the Accounting Roles to Accounting Heads in this screen.

STEP RESULT: **Accounting Roles** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.2: Accounting Roles

The screenshot shows the 'Accounting Roles' window. It has a header bar with the title 'Accounting Roles'. Below the header, there are input fields for 'Product Code' and 'Product Description'. Underneath, there's a section labeled 'Class Details' with fields for 'Class Code' and 'Class Description', and a 'Default From Class' button. Below this is a 'Roles' section. It features a table with four columns: 'Accounting Role', 'Role Description', 'Account Head', and 'General Ledger Description'. The first row of the table is highlighted. To the left of the table, there are navigation controls including '1 Of 1' and a 'Go' button. At the bottom right of the window, there are 'Ok' and 'Exit' buttons.

4. On the **Accounting Roles** screen, specify the details.
For information on fields, see the below table:

Table 3.2: Accounting Roles - Field Description

Fields	Description
Product Code	The Product code which is specified for the product is displayed here in this field.

Fields	Description
Product Description	The Product Description associated to the product code is displayed.
Class Code	Click the search icon and select the class code as required. This Identifies a security preference class that the user build with a unique ten-character Class Code. The user can follow the convention for devising the code according to his choice.
Class Description	Briefly describe the Security Preference Class that is defined. The description that the user specify is for information purposes only and will not be printed on any customer correspondence.
Accounting Role	Click the search icon and select the accounting role from the list of the roles displayed. At different stages in the life cycle of a contract, accounting entries are generated. Depending on the type of event, one leg of the entry may be passed into the customer account and the other leg into an internal account of the bank. Alternatively, both the legs may be passed into internal accounts (during an accrual, for example). Through this table, the user can define the GL/SL head to which the internal account is linked and the type of account (accounting role) is used.
Role Description	The description of the Accounting Role is displayed.
Account Head	Click the search icon and select the account head from the list of the roles displayed.
General Ledger Description	The selected account head description is displayed

5. On **Securities Repo Product** Screen, click **Events**.

The user can specify the details of the Accounting Entries and Advice, to be generated for the events that take place during the life cycle of a Repo in this screen.

STEP RESULT: **Events** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.3: Events

The screenshot shows the 'Events' window with the following fields and sections:

- Product Code**: Input field.
- Product Description**: Input field.
- Class Details**: Section containing:
 - Class Code**: Input field.
 - Class Description**: Input field.
 - Default From Class**: Button.
- Event Details**: Section containing a table with 1 record. The table has columns 'Event Code' and 'Description'.
- Accounting Entries | Advices**: Tabs at the bottom.
- OK | Exit**: Buttons at the bottom right.

6. On the **Events** screen, specify the details as required.
For information on fields, see the below table:

Table 3.3: Events - Field Description

Field	Description
Product Code	The Product code which is specified for the product is displayed here in this field.
Product Description	The Product Description associated to the product code is displayed.
Class Code	Identify a security preference class that the user build with a unique ten-character Class Code. The user can follow the convention for devising the code according to his choice.
Class Description	Briefly describe the defined Security Preference Class. WARNING: The description specified is for information purposes only and will not be printed on any customer correspondence.
Event Code	This is a Mandatory field. Click the search icon and select the Event Code from the list of the roles displayed.
Description	The description details of the event code is displayed in this field.

7. On the **Events** screen, in the **Events Details** section, select an **Event Code** from the list displayed.
8. Once done, on the **Event** screen, click **Accounting Entries**.
STEP RESULT: **Accounting Entries** is displayed.

Figure 3.4: Accounting Entries

9. On the **Accounting Entries** screen, refer to the details required.
For information on fields, see the below table:

Table 3.4: Accounting Entries - Field Description

Field	Description
Event Code	The selected event code from the list is displayed.
Event Description	The selected event code description is displayed in this field.
Accounting Role	This is a mandatory field Click the search icon and select the Accounting Role from the list of displayed.
Amount Tag	This is a mandatory field Click the search icon and select the Amount Tag from the list of displayed.
Dr/Cr	This is a mandatory field Select the option from the drop-down box. The options are: • Credit • Debit
Transaction Code	This is a mandatory field Click the search icon and select the Transaction Code from the list of displayed.
Netting	Select the option Yes / No from the drop-down box.
MIS Head	Click the search icon and select the details from the list of displayed. The user must specify the MIS Head under the accounting entries (generated at an event) are reported.
Profit GL	Click the search icon and select the profit GL from the list of displayed.

Field	Description
Loss GL	Click the search icon and select the loss GL from the list of displayed.
Rate Code	Click the search icon and select the Rate code from the list of displayed.
Revaluation Transaction Code	Click the search icon and select the Revaluation Transaction Code from the list of displayed.
Holiday Treatment	Select the option Yes / No from the drop-down box.
Revaluation Required	Select the checkbox if the revaluation required.
Rate Type Indicator	Select the Rate type from the drop-down box • Mid • Buy • Sell

10. On the **Event** screen, click **Advices**.

STEP RESULT: **Advices** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.5: Advices

11. On the **Advices** screen, specify the details required.

The field description details are as follows:

Table 3.5: Advices - Field Description

Field	Description
Event Code	The Event Code details are displayed.
Description	The event code description is displayed.
Advice Name	Click the search icon and select the Advice Name as required.

Field	Description
Description	The description of the selected advice is displayed.
Generation Time	Select the generation time from the adjoining drop-down Box. The options are: • Input • Authorize
Suppress	Select the option as required from the drop-down box. The options available are: • Yes • No
Priority	Select the option as required from the drop-down box. The options available are: • Low • Medium • High
Charges	Select the check box to apply the charges.

12. On **Securities Repo Product** Screen, click **Accrual Fee**.

STEP RESULT: **Accrual Fee Details** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.6: Accrual Fee Details

13. On the **Accrual Fee Details** screen, click **Default From Class** to Associate Accrual Fee Details with a product.

The field description details are as follows:

Table 3.6: Accrual Fee Details - Field Description

Field	Description
Product Code	The Product Code defined in the product level is displayed.
Product Description	Enter a brief description of the product. This description is associated with the product for Information retrieval purposes.
Component	Specify the Fee component
Description	Displays the Component Description
Stop Association	Specify if the Accrual for the Fee component should be stop for the contract
Basis Amount	Specify the basis amount for Fee calculation
Allow End Date Input	Specify the End date
Fee Rule	Display the Fee rule associated to the component
Fee Type	Specify the Fee type
Frequency	Specify the accrual frequency for the fee component
Frequency Value	Specify the Fee frequency value
Consider as Discount	Specify if the Fee component should be considered for IRR calculation.
Accrual Required	Specify if accrual is required for the component.
Initiation	Specify if the fee component must be initiated
Increase in Principal	Specify the increase in principal amount

14. On **Securities Repo Product** Screen, click **Discount**.

STEP RESULT: **Discount Accrual Preference** Association screen is displayed.

Figure 3.7: Discount Accrual Preference Association

Discount Accrual Preference Association

Product Code

Product Description

Class Code

Class Description

Accrual Preference

☐ Discount Accrual Required

Frequency

Handling of Fore Closure

Acquisition Type

Day Count Method

1 Of 1

☐ Currency Code *	Currency Name	Numerator Method/Denominator Method	Denominator Method

15. On **Discount Accrual Preference Association** screen, specify the fields.
On the **Discount Accrual Preference Association** screen, specify the details as required.
For more information on fields, see the below table:

Table 3.7: Discount Accrual Preference Association - Field Description

Field	Description
Product Code	The product code defined at the product is displayed.
Product Description	The description of the selected product code is displayed.
Class Code	Click the search icon and select the class code details as required from the list of values displayed.
Class Description	The description of the selected class code is displayed.
Accrual Preference	
Discount Accrual Required.	Select the check box if the Discount Accrual Required.
Frequency	Select the Frequency details from the drop-down list The values available are: • Daily • Monthly
Handling of Fore Closure	Select the Fore Closure details from the drop-down list The values available are: • Refund • Complete Accrual Specify how foreclosures for the contracts is handled. NOTE: In case the Acquisition Type is Par, there are no refunds. Only the pending accruals are completed.
Acquisition Type	The Acquisition Type determines whether the initial cash flows for a C contract with more (Premium) or less (Discount) or equal (Par) to the bill amount. The Acquisition Type determined by the cash flows of interest, charges and fees considering the Discount option is checked. The drop-down list comprises of the following values: • Par • Par/Discount • Par/Premium • Par/Discount/Premium NOTE: The acquisition type of a contract can change from premium to par/discount or otherwise depending on the charges getting liquidated during the life cycle of the contract.
Day Count Method	
Currency Code	Click the search icon and select the Currency Code from the list displayed as required.
Currency Name	The Currency name details associated

Field	Description
Numerator Method/ Denominator Method	Select the denominator method from the drop-down list. This list displays the following values: • Actual • 30 Euro • 30-US
Denominator Method	Select the denominator method from the drop-down list. This list displays the following values: • 360 • 365 • 364

16. On **Securities Repo Product Definition** screen, click **Preferences**.

STEP RESULT: **Preferences** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.8: Preferences

17. On the **Preferences** screen, specify the details as required.

Preferences are the options that are available to the user for setting the attributes of a product. The options user choose ultimately shape the product.

For example, the user has the option of applying a tax on a product. If the user specifies that tax is applicable for a product, the deal involving the product will inherit the attribute. However, the user can waive tax (if it has been defined for the product the deal involves) at deal processing.

Similarly, the user can choose between the automatic liquidation of schedules and manual liquidation; the user can choose to allow rollover of deals involving the product or deny it, and so on.

For information on fields, see the below table:

Table 3.8: Preferences - Field Description

Field	Description
Payments	Specify whether the payment method for the main interest (specified while defining attributes for the interest, commission, charge or fee) components is to be bearing, discounted or true discount. This cannot be changed at the time of processing a deal. Bearing: The interest is liquidated on the scheduled payment date(s). For example, the user has made a placement USD 100,000 for Greenville Global Bank at 20% interest for a month. Now, under the bearing type of interest payment method, the placement of USD 100,000 is advanced to Greenville Global Bank, and the interest on it is collected over the one month which is the tenor of the placement. Discounted: In this interest payment method, the interest is deducted from the principal at the time of initiating the deal. Carrying forward the example of the placement for Greenville Global Bank of USD 100,000 at 20% interest for a month, under the discounted type of interest payment, the total interest calculated for the tenor of the deal, that is one month, USD 1,666.67 is deducted from the principal (USD 100,000) and only USD 98,333.33 is advanced. True discounted: In this interest payment method, the interest is calculated on the principal in a manner differing slightly from the 'Discounted' method. The interest rate is applied to the Principal instead of Nominal, as it is done in the 'Discounted' method. For example, in the case of Greenville Global Bank's placement of USD100,000 at 20% interest for a month, under the true discounted type of interest payment, the interest calculated on the principal, USD 98,333.5, (arrived at after deducting 20% interest on the nominal) is deducted from the nominal (USD 100,000) and USD 98,360.66 is advanced. This forms the actual principal of the deal.
Allow Brokerage	Select this check box to add the brokerage to the product.
Pay Past Schedules	The user must indicate if the backdated deal that has schedules prior to today's date; those schedules have to be liquidated when the deal is initiated. A back dated deal is one, which has a Value Date (initiation date) falling before the date on which it is booked. For example, a money market deal is initiated as of today, a date in the future, or as of a date in the past. Today's date is 15 October 1997. Suppose the user initiate a deal of 15,000 USD today, with the Value Date (date on which the deal comes into effect) as 15 September 1997, the system will pass accounting entries for initiation as of 15 September 1997. But if there had been an interest payment schedule for 30 September 1997, for 500 USD, and then if the user specify that back values schedules must be liquidated, the user can make the system pass accounting entries to liquidate this schedule also when the deal is initiated. If the user specify that back dated schedules are not to be liquidated; only accrual entries are passed till today. Please note that the entries associated with each event (initiation and liquidation in this case) is passed only if they have been defined

Field	Description
Prepayment Penalty	The user specify if the penalty must be applied on prepayment of deals involving this product.
Track Accrued Interest	The user has to specify if the accrued interest of earlier placements (that has not been paid) must be considered as the utilized amount for the purpose of credit administration. (If more than one interest type of component is applicable on a product, the user must designate one as the 'main' interest.) The following example illustrates how this concept works. If user opts to track accrued interest, then the interest accrued on deals is added on to the amount utilized by the customer, for credit administration. The utilization is shown as the sum of the principal and the accrued interest in the reports generated by the credit administration (Limits) sub-system. Outstanding interest, if any, will also be shown in these reports.
Forward Dating Allowed	Choose the Value Date (That is the date on which it is initiated) for a deal from: • The date on which it is input • A date in the past or • A date in the future The user must indicate whether a deal involving a product could have a Value Date in the future. A deal must have a value date in the future only if the user has allowed it for the product that it involves. An Initiation date in the past, or today, indicated for any deal. When a deal with a Value Date in the future is stored, no accounting entries is passed on the date of input. The deal is initiated by the Automatic Contract Update function during the Beginning-of-Day (BOD) processes on the Value Date (initiation date). All the necessary accounting entries is passed on this date. However, if the Value Date falls on a holiday, the deal is initiated as per your holiday handling specifications in the Branch Parameters screen: • If the user has specified that automatic processes are to be carried out for holidays, the deal slated for initiation on holiday is initiated during end-of-day processing on the last working day before the holiday. • If the user has specified that the automatic processes are to be carried out only till System Date (today's date), the deal slated for initiation on holiday is initiated on the next working day immediately after the holiday, during beginning-of-day processing.
Tax Applicable	As part of the preferences that the user define for a product, the user can specify whether any tax is applicable to the SR product that the user is creating. If tax is specified for a product, the user can waive it for specific deals. However, if the user specify that tax is not applicable to a product, the user cannot levy a tax on any deal involving the product.

Field	Description
Allow Rollover	The user must specify whether a deal, involving the product defined, is rolled over into a new deal if it is not liquidated on its Maturity Date. If the user specify that rollover is allowed for the product, it is applicable to all the deals involving the product. However, at the time of processing a specific deal involving this product, the user can indicate that rollover is not allowed. However, if the user specify that rollover is not allowed for a product, the user cannot rollover deals involving the product. The terms of the rolled over deal is the same as those of the original deal, or they are different. If the terms must be different, they must be specified during deal processing.
Automatic Liquidation	Select this check box to allow the automatic liquidation of the product.
Intra-day Deal	Deals having the same Maturity and Value Date are known as Intra-day deals. The user are able to capture intra-day deals only if the user has indicated that the product for which the user specifies preferences is meant for intra-day deals.
Verify Funds For Principal	During auto liquidation if Verify Funds For Principal is checked at the contract level, the system checks the available balance in the Principal amount's settlement account.
Verify Funds for Interest	During auto liquidation if Verify Funds For Interest is checked at contract level, the system checks the available balance in the settlement account for the Interest amount
Verify Funds For Penalty Amount	If Verify Funds For Penalty amount is checked at the contract level during auto liquidation, the system checks the available balance in the settlement account for the Penalty amount.
Rate Fixing Required	Select this Check box to indicate if the Rate fixing is applicable for the product.
Net Negative Interest	Check this box to indicate that the system should internally net the positive and negative amounts being paid to the customer during interest liquidation. The system allows you to check this box only for products with negative interest allowed for the main component.
Product Code	The selected product code is displayed.
Accrual	

Field	Description
Frequency	This is a Mandatory Field. Define the frequency at which the user would like to accrue the components. The frequency is one of the following: • Daily • Monthly • Quarterly • Half-yearly • Yearly When the user run the Automatic Contract Update function at the end of the day, the system carries out the accruals according to the frequency that is specified. However, if the accrual date falls on a holiday, then the accruals are done as per your holiday handling specifications in the Branch parameters screen. That is: • If the user has specified that automatic events are to be processed for a holiday(s) on a working day before the holiday, the accruals falling due on holiday (s) are processed during end-of-day processing on the last working day before the holiday. • If the user has specified that the automatic events are to be processed for a holiday(s) on a working day following the holiday, the automatic events falling due on holiday (s) are processed on the next working day, during the beginning of day processing.
Start Month	Select the Start Month details as required from the drop-down list.
Start Date	Specify the Start Date as required.
Tenor	The user can set the minimum and maximum tenor limits for a product that the user creates. The user can also set a default tenor. This is the tenor that is normally associated with a deal involving the product. However, the default tenor applied to a deal is changed during its processing.
Minimum	The user can set the minimum tenor for the product here. The tenor of the deals involving this product must be greater than or equal to the tenor the user has specified here. Only the number is specified here.
Default	The user can specify the default tenor of the product here. This default tenor applies to all deals involving the product, but the user can change it at the time of deal processing. Only the number is specified here. The unit (days, months, etc.) is specified in a subsequent field. For example, the user has a Weekly Repo product. This product is for borrowings from customers for a maximum duration of one week. For such a product the user can set a minimum tenor of one day and a maximum tenor of one week. The user can also define a default tenor for the product, of, say, one week. This tenor is applicable to all the deals involving the product if the user do not specify any tenor at the time of its processing.
Maximum	The user can set the maximum tenor for the product here. The tenor of the deals involving this product must be lesser than or equal to the tenor the user has specified here. Only the number is specified here.

Field	Description
Unit	In the minimum, maximum and default tenor fields the user set the duration numerically. Here, the user specify the unit of the duration. It could be: • Days, • Months, or, • Years For example, to define the default tenor, in the Default tenor field, define the number and the unit - days, months, years, in the Unit field. Suppose, for a product; the user want to define the default tenor as 150 days. Then it would be best if the user give the following values in these fields: • Default tenor - 150 • Unit - Days To define a default tenor of 10 months for a product, the user must give the following values in the fields: • Default tenor - 10 • Unit - months To define a default tenor of eight years for a product, the user must give the following values in the fields: • Default tenor - 8 • Unit - years
Rate Variance	
Normal Rate Variance	The user needs to specify the minimum/normal variance allowed for the rate. Suppose the exchange rate variance between the exchange rate (specified for the product) and the rate captured for a Repo exceeds the value specified here. In that case, the system displays an overriding message before proceeding to apply the exchange rate. The normal variance must be less than the maximum variance. For back valued transactions, the system applies the rate based on the exchange rate history. The variance based on the rate prevailing at that time.

Field	Description
Maximum Rate Variance	The user cannot apply an exchange rate on a deal, involving the product the user is creating, which is greater than the value the user specifies as the Maximum Variance. If the exchange rate variance exceeds the standard rate by the amount the user-specified as the maximum variance; the system will not store the contract. For example, the user has specified the normal variance as 3% and the maximum variance as 6% for Product SR01. Suppose the user applies the exchange rate on a contract involving SR01 that varies from the applicable rate maintained for the day by less than 3%. In this case, the system will NOT display an overriding message. If the user apply an exchange rate on a contract involving SR01 that varies from the Standard Rate by between 3% and 6%, the system will display an override message. If the user applies an exchange rate on a contract involving SR01 that varies from the day's rate by more than 6%, the system will not store the contract. NOTE: The exchange rate variance is a percentage
Holiday Treatment Preferences The schedule or maturity date of a contract might fall on a local holiday defined for your branch or on holiday specified for the currency involved in the contract. Therefore, the user needs to specify how the system must handle holidays.	
Cascade Schedules	Select this check box, to execute the Cascade Schedules validation of the date and movement of schedules. The cascading schedules arises only if: • The user has specified that a schedule falling due on holiday has to be moved forward or backwards; and • The schedule has been defined with a definite frequency. If the user checks this box to cascade schedules, the scheduled date following the changed date is shifted following the changed date as per the frequency. If the user opt not to cascade schedules, even if one of the scheduled dates are changed, the schedules, which follow, are fixed as per the original definition.
Currency Holiday	Select this check box, to execute the Currency Holiday validation of the date and movement of schedules. The movement of schedule date or maturity date is based on the holiday treatment that the user specified for the currency specified.
Financial Center Holiday	Select this check box, to execute the financial center holiday calendar validation of the dates and movement of schedules. The movement of schedule date or maturity date is based on the holiday treatment that the user specify for the Financial Center specified.
Local Holiday	Select this check box, to execute the local holiday validation of the date and movement of schedules.

Field	Description
Move Across Month	If the user has chosen to move a schedule falling due on holiday either forward or backwards to the next or previous working day and it crosses over into a different month, the scheduled date is moved only if the user so indicate in this field. If not, the scheduled date is kept in the same month, on the last or first working day of the month, depending on whether the schedule is over the month-end or the beginning of the month. Check this box if the user want to allow movement across the month for a scheduled date that has been moved forward or backwards.
Schedule Movement	Select the Schedule Movement as required. The options available are: • Move Forward: Suppose the user has indicated that a currency holiday must not be ignored for the contract. In that case, the user need to specify whether the schedule date/maturity date must move forward to the next working day or move back to the previous working day. Check against this field to indicate that the security/ maturity date of the contract must be moving forward to the next working day • Move Backward: The schedule date/maturity date must move forward to the next working day or move back to the previous working day. Check against this field to indicate that the scheduled date/maturity date of the contract must move back to the previous working day.
Repo	
Delivery Verse Payment	Select this check box to generate MT543/MT541 and payment message MT202 is suppressed on Repo booking and liquidation. If the flag is unchecked MT540/MT542 along with payment message MT202 continues to generate.
Securities Pledged	Select the Securities pledged option as required from the drop-down list of values. The Options available are: • Move to Collateral Portfolio • Block Securities Securities pledged as part of the repo will either be moved to a collateral portfolio or blocked in bank portfolio. NOTE: When the preference for the securities pledged is selected as Move to Collateral portfolio, Internal Product is mandatory and Block product must be null. When the preference for the securities pledged is selected as Block Securities, Block Product is mandatory and Internal product must be null.
Internal Bank Product	This field captures the BankBuyBankSell deal product for moving pledged security from Banks portfolio to collateral Portfolio on repo booking.

Field	Description
Block Product	This field captures the Block product, to block the securities pledged on repo booking/margin call
Authorization Rekey Fields	Specify the values that the authorizer of a SR deal has to rekey at the time of authorization. All operations on a deal (input, modification, reversal, manual liquidation or manual rollover) have to be authorized: • By a user other than the one who carried out the operation • Before the user can begin the end-of-day operations When the user invoke a deal for authorization - as a cross-checking mechanism to ensure that the user are calling the right deal - the user can specify that the values of certain fields are entered before the other details are to be displayed. The complete details of the deal are displayed after the values to these fields are entered. This is called the 'rekey' option. If no rekey fields are defined, the details of the deal are displayed immediately once the authorizer calls the deal for authorization. The rekey option also serves as a means of ensuring the accuracy of inputs. The user can specify any or all of the following as rekeying fields: • Currency • Value Date • Contract Amount • Maturity Date NOTE: Re-key option is available only for SR Online screen and not for Payment.
Reverse Repo	
Receive Verse Payment	Select this check box to generate MT541\MT543 and payment message MT202 is suppressed on Repo booking and liquidation. If the flag is unchecked MT540/MT542 along with payment message MT202 continues to generate.
Bank Buy Product	Select the Product from the list of values to capture Bank Buy Customer Sell deal product for transferring securities received from counterparty to Collateral Portfolio on Reverse Repo Booking. NOTE: Bank Buy Customer Sell product is Mandatory for a Reverse Repo.
Bank Sell Product	Select from the list of values to capture the Product for creating Bank Sell Customer Buy deal for transferring back the securities to counterparty from collateral portfolio. NOTE: Bank Sell Customer Buy is Mandatory for a Reverse Repo.
Product Restriction	

Field	Description
Branch Restrictions	Indicate whether the user wants to create a list of allowed branches or disallowed branches by selecting one of the following options: • Allowed • Disallowed
Currency Restrictions	Indicate whether the user wants to create a list of allowed currencies or disallowed currencies by selecting one of the following options: • Allowed • Disallowed
Categories List	Indicate is the user wants to create a list of allowed customers or disallowed customers by choosing one of the following options: • Allowed • Disallowed
Collateral Revaluation	
Collateral Revaluation Preference	The Options available are: • Margin Settlement • Repricing Margin Settlement: Select this option Margin Call/Settlement to substitute the shortfall/ excess due to the price fluctuation. NOTE: Both Margin Settlement and Repricing cannot be selected at the same time. Choose any one option based on requirement. Repricing Select this option to Reprice of the repo contract notional amount.
Margin Product	Select the Product from the list of values to execute the Margin settlement. NOTE: This field is mandatory field if Margin Settlement is selected.

18. On the **Preference** screen, click **Rollover Details**.

STEP RESULT: **Rollover Details** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.9: Rollover Details

The screenshot shows a window titled "Rollover Details" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The window contains several sections for configuring a rollover:

- Product:** A text input field.
- Product Description:** A text input field.
- Rollover:** A section with two radio buttons: "Auto" and "Manual".
- ICCF Rollover:** A section with two radio buttons: "Product" and "Contract".
- Rollover Method:** A dropdown menu.
- Rollover Mechanism:** A dropdown menu with "New Version" selected.
- Roll By:** A dropdown menu with "Days" selected.
- Checkboxes:** Four checkboxes are listed on the right side: "Apply Tax", "Rollover With Interest", "Update Utilization", and "Deduct Tax on Rollover".
- Buttons:** "Ok" and "Exit" buttons are located at the bottom right of the window.

19. On the **Rollover Details** screen, specify the details as required.

For information on fields, see the below table:

Table 3.9: Rollover Details - Field Description

Field	Description
Product	The Product details selected is displayed.
Product Description	The Product description details are displayed.
Apply Tax	Select the Check box to apply the tax component.
Rollover With Interest	Select the Check box to apply the rollover component.
Update Utilization	Select the Check box to apply the Utilization component.
Deduct Tax on Rollover	Select the Check box to apply the deduct tax on Rollover component.
Roll over	Select the Rollover option as required. The options available are: • Auto • Manual
ICCF Rollover	Select the Rollover option as required. The options available are: • Product • Contract
Rollover Method	Select the Rollover Method details as required form the drop- down list.
Rollover Mechanism	Select the Rollover Mechanism details as required form the drop- down list.
Roll By	Select the Roll By details as required form the drop- down list.

20. On the **Preference** screen, click **Schedules**.

When creating a Repo product, the user can define schedule details such as the reference date, the frequency, the month and the date for each component. The user can capture these details in the Product Default Schedules screen.

STEP RESULT: **Product Default Schedules** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.10: Product Default Schedules

21. On the **Product Default schedules** screen, specify the details as required.

For information on fields, see the below table:

Table 3.10: Product Default schedules - Field Description

Field	Description
Product Code	The product code defined at the product definition is displayed.
Product Description	The description of the product selected is displayed.
Component	This is a mandatory field. Click the search icon and select the Component from the list displayed.
Refer	This is a mandatory field. Select the option from the drop down list. The options are: • Calendar • Value Date

Field	Description
Frequency	This is a mandatory field. Select the option from the drop-down list. The options are: • Daily • Weekly • Monthly • Quarterly • Half Yearly • Yearly • Bullet
Unit	Indicate here the number of units for the frequency the user has set for a particular component.
Day	Select the Day from the drop-down list.
Month	Select the Month from the drop-down list.
Date	Specify the Date as required.
Period Unit	Specify the Period unit from the drop down list.
Period	Specify the schedule period.

22. On the **Preference** screen, click **Liquidation Order**.

STEP RESULT: **Component Liquidation Order** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.11: Component Liquidation Order

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Component Liquidation Order". At the top, there are two input fields: "Product Code" and "Product Description". Below these is a section titled "Liquidation Order" which contains a table. The table has two columns: "Component" and "Liquidation Order". The first row of the table has a checkbox in the "Component" column. At the bottom right of the window, there are two buttons: "Ok" and "Exit".

23. On the **Component Liquidation Order** screen, specify the details as required.

For a contract defined with manual liquidation of components, the Liquidation Order is considered when a payment has to be automatically distributed among the various outstanding components. For a contract with automatic liquidation, the order of liquidation becomes important when funds are insufficient in the repayment account on the day of liquidation, and more than one component has a schedule falling due on that day.

Under such circumstances, the user might want to allot priority to the recovery of certain components. For example, the user might want to recover the interest (or interest type of components) first and then the principal. The ageing analysis function takes over once a component is overdue, and an appropriate penalty is applied. For a component on which penalty interest has been applied, the user may wish to recover penalty interest first, the interest next and finally the principal.

NOTE: The user can specify the liquidation order for all the interest type of components and the principal.

For information on fields, see the below table:

Table 3.11: Component Liquidation Order - Field Description

Field	Description
Product Code	The product code defined at the product is displayed.
Product Description	The description of the defined product is displayed.
Component	Click the search icon and select the Component details from the list of values displayed.
Liquidation Order	The Liquidation order details are displayed as required.

Specify Grace Days to Penalty

The grace period specifies the period within which the penalty interest (if one is defined for the product) will not be applied, even if the repayment is made after the due date. This period is defined as a specific number of days and will begin when the repayment becomes due.

Penalty interest is applied on repayments made after the grace period and is calculated for the entire period. It has been outstanding (that is, from the date the payment was due).

For example, an interest repayment on a borrowing deal is due on 15 June 1998. the user has specified a grace period of 5 days, after which a penalty interest of 2% is imposed.

If the customer makes the interest payment on 18 June, which falls within the grace period, he/she will not have to pay penal interest. But if the customer makes the payment after the expiry of the grace period, after 20 June, he/she is charged penal interest. It is calculated from 16 June onwards and not from 20 June. If the payment is made within the grace period, normal interest is applied to the scheduled repayment date.

Grace Days for Multiple Penal Components

If your bank has chosen to have multiple penal components, the user can define grace days (in days, months or years) to be applicable for each level.

The penalty is not applied if the payment made within the grace period that the user has defined for each level. It becomes applicable only after the expiry of the grace period. If applied, the penalty is calculated from the day the payment becomes overdue.

NOTE: The number of grace days specified for a level must be more than the number of grace days specified for the previous level. Higher the level, higher the number of grace days defined for the level.

For a product, the user can specify the grace period after which the penalty will start accruing, through the Grace Days Definition screen.

24. On the **Preference** screen, click **Grace Days**.

STEP RESULT: **Grace Days** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.12: Grace Days

Grace Days

Product Code Product Description

Grace Days

1 Of 1 Go

Level Number *	No of Units / Nominal Value	Units *
----------------	-----------------------------	---------

Ok Cancel

25. On the **Grace Days** screen, specify the details as required.
- STEP RESULT: For information on fields, see the below table:

Table 3.12: Grace Days - Field Description

Field	Description
Product Code	The Product code defined at the product level is displayed.
Product Description	The Product Description of the selected product are displayed.
Level Number	This is a Mandatory field. The system updates the level of the intermediary in the hierarchy on saving the record. The level numbers get defaulted depending on the number of levels defined in the ICCB Details screen, irrespective of the Basis Amount Type i.e. if the user define three levels of penalty for the Basis Amount type Principal and four levels of penalty for the Basis Amount type Interest, levels 1 to 4 are available to the user in the Grace days definition screen. The user will not be able to add levels in this screen. Since the level numbers get defaulted from the ICCB Details screen, it is imperative that the expected and overdue components are defined at the ICCB Details screen, prior to the definition of grace days for the levels. NOTE: Grace days are defined for a level. The user cannot specify different grace days for the same level for different Basis amount types. After the product has been saved and authorize, the user are not allowed to modify grace days.
No of Units/Nominal Value	Specify the number of units or nominal values.
Units	This is a Mandatory field. The user must specify the grace period for each level. Each overdue component will come into effect when the grace period associated with the level expires. The grace period is expressed in: • Days • Months • Years

Grace Days to Penalty

The grace period specifies the period within which the penalty interest (if one is defined for the product) will not be applied, even if the repayment is made after the due date. This period is defined as a specific number of days and will begin from the date the repayment becomes due.

Penalty interest is applied on repayments made after the grace period and is calculated for the entire period it has been outstanding (that is, from the date the payment was due).

For example, an interest repayment on a borrowing deal is due on 15 June 1998. The user has specified a grace period of 5 days, after which a penalty interest of 2% is imposed.

Now, if the customer makes the interest payment on 18 June, which falls within the grace period, he/she will not have to pay penal interest, but if the customer makes the payment after the grace period's expiry, that is, after 20 June, he/she is charged penal interest. It is calculated from 16 June onwards and not from 20 June. If the payment is made within the grace period, normal interest is applied as of the scheduled repayment date.

Grace Days for Multiple Penal Components

If your bank has chosen to have multiple penal components, the user can define grace days (in days, months or years) to be applicable for each level. The penalty will not be applied if the payment made within the grace period that the user has defined for each level. It becomes applicable only after the expiry of the grace period. If applied, the penalty is calculated from the day the payment becomes overdue.

NOTE: The number of grace days specified for a level must be more than the number of grace days specified for the previous level. Higher the level, higher the number of grace days defined for the level.

For a product, the user can specify the grace period after which the penalty will start accruing, through the Grace Days Definition screen.

26. On **Securities Repo Product Definition** screen, click **Interest**.

STEP RESULT: **ICCF** Details screen is displayed

Figure 3.13: ICCF Details

ICCF Details

Product Code Product Description

Basis

Amount Type

Pre Payment Method

Stop Application ☐

Propagation Required ☐

Accrual Required ☐

Allow Amendment ☐

Consider as Discount ☐

Collection Type ☒ Advance ☐ Arrear

Category

Settlement Currency

Level Number

Main Component ☐

Negative Interest Allowed ☐

Bulk Amount ☐

Link Contract As Rate Code ☐

Units

Grace Period

Negative Class Code

Alternative Risk-Free Rate ☐

Alternative Risk-Free Rate Preferences

Lookback ☐

Payment Delay ☐

Lockout ☐

Interest Rollover ☐

Last Reset ☐

Last Recent ☐

Plain ☐

Index Value ☐

Rate Compounding ☐

Observation Shift ☐

Weighted Average ☐

Payment Movement Calendar

Lookback Days

Payment Delay Days

Lockout Days

Computation Calendar

Financial Center

Base Computation Method

Spread/Margin Computation Method

Spread Adj Computation Method

Rate Compounding Method

RFR Rounding Unit

Interest

Rate Type

Rate Code

Borrow Lend Indicator

Rate Cycle Type

Event

Rule

Component *

Code Usage

Reset Tenor

Margin Basis

Margin Application

Event Description

Rule Description

Description

Pricing Details

External Pricing ☐

1 Of 1

Product Limits

1 Of 1 Go

☐ Currency *	Default Rate	Minimum Rate	Maximum Rate	Default Spread	Minimum Spread	N

Ok Exit

27. On the **ICCF** screen, specify the details as required.

For information on fields. see the below table

Table 3.13: ICCF - Field Description

Field	Description
Amount Type	Specify the basis on which interest has to be calculated. By default, the principal will be taken as the basis.
Pre Payment Method	The prepayment method identifies the computation of the prepayment penalty for the contract.
Stop Application	Select this check box to stop application. The attributes defined for a product will be automatically applied to all contracts involving the product. If, for some reason, the user want to stop applying the Interest Rule defined for the product on contracts that are to be initiated in the future (involving the product), the user could do so through the Product 'ICCB Details' screen. In effect, stopping the application of a component for a product would be equivalent to deleting the component from the product. By specifying that the application of the component must be stopped, the user has the advantage of using the definition made for the component again, by making it applicable.
Propagation Required	Select this check box if the propagation is required. If the interest amount collected from the borrower must be passed on to participants of the contract, check the 'Propagation Required' check box.
Accrual Required	Select this check box if the accrual is required.
Allow Amendment	A change to a contract (after it has been authorized) that involves a change in its financial details constitutes an Amendment on the contract. The user can indicate whether such an Amendment, called a Value Dated Change, must be allowed for the interest component being defined. The user can amend the following through this function: • Interest rate • Rate code • Spread • Interest amount
Consider as Discount	While defining an interest, the user can indicate whether the interest component is to be considered for discount accrual on a constant yield basis or whether accrual of interest is required. If the user select the Consider as Discount option the interest received against the component is used in the computation of the constant yield and subsequently amortized over the tenor of the associated contract. Checking the Consider as Discount also indicates whether the interest component is to be considered for IRR computations. The Consider as Discount option is not available if the amount category is Penalty.

Field	Description
Collection Type	Select the collection type. The options are: • Advance • Arrear
Category	If the interest rate type is Fixed or Floating, the Amount Basis Category specifies the type of balance that has to be considered for interest application. It could be any one of the following: • Expected • Overdue • Normal • Outstanding If the Basis Amount Category is Expected, the balance on which interest has to be applied will be the Expected balance (the balance assuming that all the scheduled repayments defined for the contract are made on time). If the Basis Amount Category is Overdue, the balance on which interest has to be applied will be the amount that is overdue, based on the repayment method defined for the contract. An example of this category is the application of penalty interest on the Principal amount or interest, when a repayment has not been made, as per the date specified for the contract.
Settlement Currency	Specify the currency in which the interest, charge or fee component gets settled. The currency mentioned here must exist in the currency table. By default it is the local currency.
Level Number	Grace Period and Level Number The user can apply interest at various levels: • Main interest on principal – Level 0 (Category: Expected) • Interest on overdue interest – Level 1 (Category: Overdue) • Interest on Level 1 interest – Level 2 (Category: Overdue) ... and so on. For each interest component, starting from Level 1 and belonging to 'Overdue' category, the user can also specify the number of grace days, beyond the main interest due date, after which that interest component becomes applicable. For each such component, the default value for the number of grace days is: Number of grace days for the previous level + 30 days The user can change this value, provided that the number of grace days for a component (level) does not exceed the number of grace days for any successive level. At any point, an amendment of the number of grace days for any or more interest components at the Product ICCB level will only affect new contracts. For interest components of Level 0 and 'Expected' category, the default value for grace days is 0 – this cannot be changed.

Field	Description
Main Component	The user can define any number of interest type of components (tenor based components) for a product. If the user has defined more than one interest type of component, the user can specify the main interest component as 'Main Component'. This will be the interest component that will be used for capitalization or amortization purposes if the repayment schedules are defined thus. The details of this Main Component will be shown in the Contract Details screen and the user can change them there without having to invoke the Contract ICCB Details screen. Components other than the main component have to be processed through the Contract ICCB Details screen.
Bulk Amount	When a contract gets rolled over, the user may wish to split it into 2 contracts - one for the interest amount (I) and the other for the principal amount (P). If the user want the floating rate pickup for both the new contracts (tenor/amount) to be based on P+I of the original contract, check the 'Bulk Amount' check box. For example, if the principal amount is Rs.1000 and Interest accrued is Rs.100. Upon rollover, your bank may require two contracts, one for Rs.1000 (Principal contract) and the other for Rs.100(interest contract). Lets say the slab rate followed by your bank is: • 0 – 1000 - 3% • 1001 – 2000 - 4% In the normal course, system would apply 3% interest rate on both the contracts of Rs.1000 and Rs.100 (since both fall within 0 -1000 slab). But if the 'Bulk Amount' option is chosen, then 4% is applied on both the contracts (as if a single contract of Rs.1100 is rolled over where system would have applied 4pct).
Link Contract As Rate Code	The user can use this field to indicate whether a fixed rate contract may be linked to the floating rate component, instead of a rate code. Check this box to indicate that a fixed rate contract may be linked.
Grace Period	The grace days that user specify for any level of interest in the Product ICCF screen will default to contracts entered under that product.
Alternative Risk-Free Rate	Select the Alternate Risk-Free Rate check box to enable the Alternate Risk Free-Rate preferences. For more information on the Alternate Risk Free-Rate preferences fields, refer to Table 4.2: Treasury Interest Class Definition - Field Description.
Rate Type	The Rate Type indicates whether the interest is a Fixed Rate, a Floating Rate or a Special amount. When creating a product, the user must specify the Rate Type through the 'Product - ICCB Details' screen. If the Rate Type is a Floating Rate, the user must also specify the Rate Code to which the product has to be linked.

Field	Description
Rate Code	Each Rate Code corresponds to a rate defined for a combination of Currency, Amount (if it is necessary) and an Effective Date. These details are maintained in the Floating Rates table. This rate will be applied to contracts involving the product.
Borrow Lend Indicator	Floating rates are defined with a borrow or a lend tag attached to them. Here, the user indicate the nature of the floating rate that needs to be picked up for the interest component. The options available are: • Borrow • Lend • Mid
Rate Cycle Type	For floating type of interest components and fixed type with rate code attached, the user can indicate the manner in which floating rates must be applied. The preference that the user specify here is used when an interest component does not fit into any direct parameter defined for the floating rate code. The options available are: • Up – Choose this option to indicate that the rate of the upper tenor slab must be used. • Down - Choose this option to indicate that the rate of the lower tenor slab must be used • Interpolate - Choose this option to indicate that the rate must be interpolated between the rates of the upper and lower slabs • Round Off - Choose this option to indicate that the tenor of the component must be rounded off to the nearest whole number. The rate defined for the derived tenor will be applied to the component
Event	The event is to which the component must be applied together with its description.
Rule	Rule associated to the Interest component
Component	The component for which the user are entering details together with its description.
Code Usage	The user must specify the method in which the rates in the Floating Rates table have to be applied. It could either be automatic application (meaning the rate has to be applied every time it changes), or periodic application (meaning the rate has to be applied at a regular frequency, defined for each contract involving the product).
Reset Tenor	Enter the tenor for which the floating rate (when applied automatically) needs to be picked up from the floating rates table, for contracts using this product. This field is applicable to floating type of interest components and fixed type with rate code attached.

Field	Description
Margin Basis	Indicate the basis for the interest margin and the method for applying the interest margin on the selected interest component for contracts using this product. The user need to specify how the system must obtain the interest margin (if any) that must be applied on the selected interest component at the time of fixing the interest rate for contracts using the product. The available options are: • Facility - The system defaults the margin from the borrower facility contract with which the drawdown is linked. • Tranche - The system defaults the margin from the borrower tranche contract with which the drawdown is associated. • Drawdown - If this option is chosen, the user must enter the applicable margin when the interest rate is fixed. • This component which the user select is excluded from all the processing including liquidation and this calculation type is only used for margin application. • After defining this component, booked formula for main interest component needs to be modified by replacing INTEREST_RATE with INTEREST_RATE + MARGIN_RATE. By doing this the interest gets calculated based on resolved interest rate (i.e. including floating rate and spread if applicable) and the margin. • Customer - If this option is chosen, then the margin will be applicable to all draw down contracts under the selected customer.
Margin Application	Margin Application can be periodic or automatic
Event Description	Defaults event description
Rule Description	Defaults Rue description
Description	Defaults Component description
Pricing Details	
External Pricing	Check this box for external pricing of interest component.
Product Limits	
Currency	Specify the currency for which limits are maintained
Rate Fixing Days	Defaults fixing days from Rate fixing maintenance screen. user will be able to modify the same.
Fixing Date Movement	Defaults fixing date movement from Rate fixing maintenance screen. user will be able to modify the same

Field	Description
Default Rate	Specify the default rate on contract creation. User will be able to modify the same.
Minimum Rate	Specify the minimum rate on contract creation. If the interest rate specified for a contract is less than this minimum rate, the minimum rate is applied on the contract
Maximum Rate	Specify the maximum rate on contract creation. If the interest rate specified for a contract is greater than this maximum rate, this rate will be applied on the contract.
Default Spread	Specify the default spread for a Floating rate type on contract creation
Minimum spread	Specify the minimum spread for a floating rate type product. If the spread specified during contract processing is less than the value specified as the minimum spread, this value will be picked up as the spread.
Maximum Spread	Specify the maximum spread for a floating rate type product. If the spread specified during contract processing is more than the value specified as maximum spread, this value will be picked up as the spread.
Interest Basis	This field indicates how the system must consider the tenor basis upon which interest is computed over a schedule or interest period, in respect of the interest component being associated with the product.
Denominator Basis	This field indicates the interest methods which have their interest basis set to ACTUAL i.e. 30(EURO)/ACTUAL, 30(US)/ACTUAL and ACTUAL/ACTUAL. Denominator Basis is used to specify how the month of February is treated when the denominator is 'Actual'. There are two types of denominator basis methods: - Per Interest Basis – Here the computation would be done based on ACT/ACT–ISMA Interest Method. In this case, the '366 Basis' field will not be applicable. - Per Annum (A) – Here the interest calculation will depend on the value the user specifies for 366 Basis
366 Basis	This is applicable only if the Denominator Basis is set to 'Per Annum'. The user can select one of the following values here: - Leap Year - Leap Date - computation would be done based on ACT/ACT - FRF Interest Method
No of Interest Period	This is applicable if the Denominator Basis is 'Per Interest Period'. Here the user can specify the number of Interest periods (Schedules) in the financial year.

28. On the **Securities Repo Product Definition** screen, click **Charge**
STEP RESULT: **Charge Details** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.14: Charge Details

The screenshot shows the 'Charge Details' window with the following sections:

- Product Code** and **Product Description** fields at the top.
- Component Details** section:
 - Component *** (mandatory field) and **Description** fields.
 - Charge Type** dropdown menu with options: **Net Consideration** and **Advice Charge**.
 - Debit/Credit** dropdown menu with options: **Add/Subtract** and **SWIFT Qualifier**.
 - Checkboxes: **Stop Association**, **Propagation Required**, and **Default From Class**.
- Event Details** section:
 - Event For Association** and **Event For Application** fields.
 - Description** fields for both events.
 - Basis Amount Tag** and **Description** fields.
- Rule Details** section:
 - Settlement Currency**, **Rule**, and **Description** fields.
 - Checkboxes: **Default Waiver** and **Capitalize**.
- Other Details** section:
 - Checkboxes: **Allow Rule Amendment**, **Amend After Association**, **Allow Amount Amendment**, **Accrual Required**, **Amend After Application**, and **Consider as Discount**.
 - Discount Basis** dropdown menu.

At the bottom right are **Ok** and **Cancel** buttons.

29. On the **Charge Details** screen, specify the details as required.
For information on fields, see the below table:

Table 3.14: Charge Details - Field Description

Field	Description
Product Code	The product code defined in the product screen is displayed.
Product Description	The product description of the selected product is displayed.
Component Details	
Component	This is a mandatory field.
Description	Defaults Charge component description
Charge Type	Charges can be collected from the counter party or from a third party. The user can select one of the following values from the adjoining drop-down list: • Counter Party - This indicates that the customer is captured as part of the contract. • Their Charges - This indicates that your bank is collecting other bank's charges

Field	Description
Net Consideration	The sum of the different components of a contract determines the net value of the contract. The user can indicate that a charge component must be taken into account when determining the net value of a contract by choosing the Net Consideration option.
Advice Charge	The system defaults the local currency as charge currency when this check box is checked. If unchecked, then the system defaults the charge currency as per the ICCB rule maintenance.
Stop Association	The user can instruct the system not to calculate charge for a product by clicking this option. The charge details specified for a product will be automatically applied on all contracts involving the product. However, while processing a contract, the user can waive the application of all or specific charge rules for the contract.
Propagation Required	This option defaults from the 'Charge Class Maintenance' screen but can be modified here if required.
Debit/Credit	Specify if the charge must be debited or credited from the counterparty
Add/Subtract	If the user choose to include the charge component in the net value, the user must indicate if the charge component is to be added, while calculating the net consideration amount, or subtracted.
SWIFT Qualifer	The user can report the charge component of a contract in the SWIFT messages that the user generates. To do this, identify the component, when building it in the Charge Class Maintenance screen, with the appropriate SWIFT code.
Event Description	Event for Association The event at which the user might like to associate a charge component to a contract is referred to as the Association Event.
Description	Associated Event description is defaulted
Event For Liquidation	The event at which the charge component is actually liquidated is referred to as the liquidation Event. Accounting entries are passed on liquidation
Description	Application Event description is defaulted.
Event for Application	The event at which the charge component is actually calculated is referred to as the Application Event. At this event, no accounting entry (for the charge component) is passed.
Description	Application Event description is defaulted
Basis Amount Tag	The basis on which charge is calculated is referred to as the Basis Amount.
Description	System defaults the amount tag description

Field	Description
Settlement Currency	Charges or fees levied on a contract will be settled in the Settlement Currency that the user specify for the charge class associated with the product (under which the contract is processed). However, when processing a contract, the user can choose to settle the charge in another currency.
Rule	The user can link a charge rule that the user has defined to the charge component that the user are building. When the user link a rule to a component, the attributes that the user has defined for the rule will default to the component.
Description	System defaults Rule description
Default Waiver	If the user want to indicate that the charge rule must be deemed as waived by default, select this option.
Capitalize	The user can capitalize the payment of charges and fees. If the charge is not paid on a scheduled date, the outstanding charge amount will be added to the outstanding principal and this becomes the principal for the next schedule. If a partial payment has been made, the unpaid amount will be capitalized (the unpaid charge is added to the unpaid principal and this becomes the principal for the next schedule).
Other Details	
Allow Rule Amendment	If the user likes to allow the amendment of a rule for a charge component when linked to a contract, check this box.
Amend After Association	If the user likes to allow the amendment after association of a rule for a charge component, check this box. Once checked the system will allow the user to modify the rule after the association event is triggered for the linked contract.
Allow Amount Amendment	If the user likes to allow amendment of the charge amount calculated by the system as per the charge rule, check this box.
Accrual Required	Checking this indicates that the charges have to be accrued. Subsequently, the charges are accrued using the upfront fee system.
Amend After Application	If the user likes to allow the amendment of the charge amount after application of a rule for a charge component, check this box. Once checked the system will allow the user to modify the charge amount after the application event is triggered for the linked contract.
Consider as Discount	While defining a charge class for either the securities or the bills module, the user can indicate whether the charge component is to be considered for discount accrual on a constant yield basis. If the user select this option the charge received against the component is used in the computation of the constant yield and subsequently amortized over the tenor of the associated contract. Checking this option also indicates that the component is to be used for IRR calculation.

Field	Description
Discount Basis	While defining a charge class the user can define the discount basis for the purpose of IRR computation. The user can choose either of the following as discount basis: • Inflow – If the user choose Inflow, the charge will be considered as an inflow for IRR computation • Outflow – If the user choose Outflow, the charge will be treated as an outflow for IRR computation The user can define discount basis only if the 'Consider as Discount' option is enabled.

30. On the **Securities Repo Product Definition** screen, click **Tax**.

STEP RESULT: **Tax Details** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.15: Tax Details

31. On the **Tax Details** screen, specify the details as required.

For information on fields, see the below table

Table 3.15: Tax Details - Description

Field	Description
Tax Scheme	Choose A Tax Scheme from the Option list
Product Description	Add Product code and its description like other sub system
Scheme Description	System defaults scheme description
Tax Details	
Tax Rule	System defaults the Tax Rule mapped to the scheme for Tax computation

Field	Description
Tax Component	The method of tax application defined for the Tax Rule will be applied on this component
Basis Amount Tag	Amount tag on which Tax is computed
Event	The user must specify the event for which the tax is applicable.
Tax type	The type of tax, decides the bearer the tax. It could be the bank or the customer. A customer bears withholding type of tax and the tax component is debited to the customer's account. The bank bears an expense type of tax and the tax component is booked to a tax expense account.
Minimum Interest Rate Code for Tax	Specify the rate code for Tax
Currency Details	
Currency	Specify the currency from the list of option.
Maximum Interest Period for Tax	Specify the maximum interest period for the tax
Period Unit	Specify the period as • Days • Months • Year
Minimum Interest Amount for Tax	Specify the minimum Interest amount for the tax

32. On the **Securities Repo Product Definition** screen, click **MIS**.

STEP RESULT: **MIS Details** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.16: MIS Details

33. On the **MIS Details** screen, specify the details as required.
For information on fields, see the below table

Table 3.16: MIS Details - Field Description

Field	Description
MIS Group	Select the MIS group details from the list of values displayed.
Pool Code	Select the Pool Code details from the list of values displayed.
MIS Classes	
MIS Class	Define the MIS Class details for the security.
MIS Code	Specify the MIS Code details as required.
Cost Code	Select the Cost Code details as required.

34. On the **Securities Repo Product Definition** screen, click **Status**.
STEP RESULT: **Status Control** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.17: Status Control

The screenshot shows the 'Status Control' window with the following sections:

- Product Code:** A text field for entering the product code.
- Accruals:** A section with checkboxes for 'Stop Accruals', 'Reverse Accruals', 'Complete Accruals', and 'Transfer'.
- Status Control:** A section with a 'Status *' field, 'Transaction' and 'Sequence' text fields, and a 'Derivation Rule' text field.
- Automatic Movement:** A section with checkboxes for 'Forward' and 'Reverse'.
- Status Advises:** A section with a 'Message *' field and a 'Go' button.
- Product Status GL:** A table with columns: Accounting Role, Upward From GL, Description, Accounting Head, Description, and Downward Movement From GL Account Head. It includes a 'Go' button and a 'De' button.
- Account Product Status GL:** A table with columns: Accounting Role, Role Description, and Account Head. It includes a 'Go' button.

At the bottom right, there are 'OK' and 'Exit' buttons.

35. On the **Status Control** screen, specify the details as required.
For information in fields, see the table:

Table 3.17: Status Control

Field	Description
Product Code	The product code defined is displayed in this field.
Accruals	
Stop Accruals	Indicate that accruals (on all accruable components), must be stopped, when the contract moves to the status being defined. By doing so, ensure that your Receivable accounts, for interest and other components, are not updated for a contract on which repayment has been defaulted.

Field	Description
Reverse Accruals	Indicate that the outstanding accruals (where a component has been accrued but not paid) on the contract must be reversed when it moves to the status that the user are defining. If the user specify so, the accrual entries passed on the contract, will be reversed when the status change is carried out. Future accruals must necessarily be stopped if accruals, done till the date of status change, have to be reversed
Complete Accruals	Check this option to complete accruals. Indicating if status changes have to be carried out automatically. Indicate the movement preference for statuses.
Transfer	Check this option if accrual must be transfered from one GL to another GL
Status	This is the sequence in which, a contract must move to the status the user are defining. Usually, more than one status is defined for a product.
Transaction	The user must indicate the Transaction Code to be used for the GL transfer entries, involved in the status change.
Sequence	User must indicate the sequence in which a contract moves from status to status
Status Control	
Derivation Rule	If the user has opted for automatic status change, specify the criteria (rules) based on which the system will perform the status change
Automatic Movement	Add the Option • Forward - A forward status change is one in which the status changes from one to the next. • Reverse - A reverse status change is one in which the status changes from present status to the previous. Such a situation arises when a payment is made on a contract with a status other than Active
Status Advice	
Message	Specify the advice or message that the user wants sent to the customer, when a contract moves automatically (forward) into the status the user is defining.

Field	Description
Select Elements	Select element based on which the user needs to build a condition for automatic status change of Repo. The drop-down list displays the following elements: • Customer Risk • Customer Group • Transfer Days • Maturity Days Choose the appropriate one.
Operators	Select the operator for building a condition for automatic status change. Use multiple elements, in conjunction with the functions and arithmetic operators. The drop-down list displays the following operators: • + (add) • - (subtract) • * (multiply) • / (divide)
Logical Operators	Select the logical operator for building a condition for automatic status change. The system uses the logical operators in combination with the elements for creating derivation rules. The drop-down list displays the following logical operators: • > (greater than) • >= (greater than or equal to) • < (less than) • <= (less than or equal to) • = (equal to) • < > (not equal to)
Accounting Role	Specify the accounting role (asset, liability, contingent asset, etc), for the GL into which the repo has to be transferred, when its status changes.
Upward From GL	For each component, the user must indicate the GL from which it has to be moved, when there is a status change.
Description	System defaults the GL description
Accounting Head	Specify the new GL (accounting head), under which the repo has to be reported. Select an option from the option list, which displays the description of the GL.
Description	System defaults Accounting Head description
Downward Movement From GL Account Head	For each component, the user must indicate the GL from which it has to be moved, when there is a status change.

Field	Description
Downward Movement To GL Account Head	For each component, the user must indicate the GL to which it has to be moved, when there is a status change. For principal, the GL will be changed, while for the other components, the receivable accounts will be moved to the new GL.
Accounting Role	Specify the accounting role (asset, liability, contingent asset, etc), for the GL into which the repo has to be transferred, when its status changes.
Role Description	Accounting role description is defaulted
Account Head	Specify the new GL (accounting head), under which the repo has to be reported. Select an option from the option list, which displays the description of the GL.

3.3.2 Process a SR Deal

A product is a specific service that the user offer your customers.

For example, the user may offer an 'overnight repo' facility to your customers amongst other financial services. By defining the overnight repo facility as a product - with specific attributes, -the user can categorize all overnight repo, which shares the attributes, defined for the product.

The other advantage of defining a product is that the user can define certain general attributes for a product that will default to all contracts (repo or reverse repo) involving it.

NOTE: When the user enters into a deal with a customer, the user enter into a contract.

Contracts are customer-specific.

Deals (contracts) inherit the attributes of the product by default. This means the user need not define these general attributes each time the user inputs a deal involving the product. These general attributes are changed at the time of processing a deal.

Besides, these general attributes which a deal inherits from a product - and which is changed for it - there are the specific attributes which the user has to define for the deal:

- The Counterparty (customer) details
- The deal amount
- The deal currency
- The repayment account for the deal
- The securities pledged or received

,and so on

3.4 Features of the Contract Details screen

Every product created in your bank is endowed with certain general attributes. A deal that the user enters into acquires the general attributes defined for the product it involves. To recall an endowed product with the following general attributes:

- The product code, description, slogan, start and end date for the product and remarks
- The frequency of interest accrual
- The tenor limits for the product

-
- The liquidation mode: manual or automatic
 - Whether a deal involving the product is rolled over into a new deal if it is not liquidated on its maturity date
 - Whether the accrued interest of earlier placement(s) must be considered as part of the “utilized amount” while tracking credit utilization for a customer.
 - Whether tax has to be applied.
 - Whether brokerage has to be applied.
 - The exchange rate variance (for a special customer, the user can choose to apply a rate that is greater than the standard exchange rate defined for the currency. The user can impose some restrictions on the special rate by way of specifying a variance). Whether a penalty is to be imposed if there is an advance repayment.
 - Whether interest schedule amounts have to be recomputed in case of an advance payment
 - Whether a deal involving a product is booked to be initiated on a date in the future.
 - Whether for a backdated deal that has schedules prior to today’s date, the schedules have to be liquidated when the deal is initiated. A back dated deal is one, which has an initiation date, which falls before the date on which it is booked.
 - The payment type for main interest - bearing, discounted or true discounted
 - The values to be rekeyed, by the authorizer of a contract, at the time of authorization
 - The liquidation order of various components in case of auto liquidation
 - Repayment schedules
 - Aging analysis details such as the movement of deals from one status to another; the mode of status change - whether forward and reverse movements must be automatic or manual; reversal or stoppage of accruals upon change of status; the transfer GL upon status change; the messages to be generated; and the transfer days for interim schedules and maturity schedules.
 - Specifying rollover details like updating credit limit utilization on rollover (for a placement), tax on rollover, rolling over with interest or without, deduction of tax on rollover.
 - Details of interest, charge and fee.
 - Other tax details like the component being taxed, the type of tax and the event (booking, liquidation, etc.) Upon which it is applied.
 - The accounting roles and the general ledgers for accounting purposes when an event (initiation, liquidation, etc.) Takes place, and the advices or messages to be generated.
 - The customer categories and customers who is counterparty to a deal involving the product.
 - The branch and currency restrictions

While saving a Securities Repo contract, the system will pass certain information about the Securities Repo contract to the FATCA accounts and obligations maintenance for the customer. This is done if the beneficiary account’s

customer has a reportable FATCA classification and if the SR product used to book the contract is present in the FATCA Products, account class and Instruments maintenance.

If the SR contract is closed or liquidated completely, then the corresponding row in FATCA accounts and obligations maintenance is archived. If the user deletes the SR contract before authorization, they must delete the corresponding entry in FATCA accounts and obligations maintenance.

Specify the following details:

- The Portfolio ID in which the user would like to block securities (this specification is not mandatory for a reverse repo deal that involves a walk-in customer).
- The Security ID(s) that the user would like to block
- The SK Location and the SK Account where the security to be blocked is held
- The format of each security (scrip-based, dematerialized, immobilized, etc.)
- The Number of Units of each security that the user is blocking
- If the underlying security is defined with a series redemption, the series
- Settlement details like the credit/debit branch, booking date, value date, original start date, user input maturity date and liquidation mode. In an outgoing MT518 message, this maturity date is captured in field 98a. Field 98a is sequence B is generated with only option A.

3.5 Capture Details of Repo Contract

This topic describes the systematic instruction to capture details of Repo Contract.

CONTEXT:

When the user enters into a repo (or reverse repo) deal, the user must associate it with a product that the user has maintained. By default, a deal inherits all the attributes of the product with which it is associated. Most deal details are captured for the product the deal involves. These details default to the deal. The user can capture the details of repo deals in the Securities Repo – Online screen.

1. On Homescreen, specify **SRDTRONL** in the text box, and click next arrow.

STEP RESULT: **Securities Repo Contract Online** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.18: Securities Repo Contract Online

Securities Repo Contract Online

New Enter Query

Product Code *
Product Description
Source
Dealer
Broker
Deal Input Time
Reject Reason

Version Number ◀ Of ▶

Contract Reference Number *
User Reference Number
External Reference Number
Reversal reference Number
Outstanding Amount

Contract Schedules Rollover Preferences ESMA Details

Customer Number *
Customer Name
Currency *
Amount *
Local Currency Amount
Line
Liability No

Settlement Details
Debit Branch
Debit Account
Debit account Description
Credit Branch
Credit Account
Credit Account Description
Liquidation
Rollover Allowed

Rounding Details
Rounding Rule
Decimals
Units
Interest Period Basis
Payment Method
Schedule Type
Tax Scheme
Contract Derived Status
Remarks

Dates and Maturity
Original Start Date
Booking Date
Value Date *
User Maturity Date
Maturity Date
Notice Days
Intra Day
Tenor
Maturity Type

Reporting Details
Currency
Amount
Outstanding Amount

Events | Brokerage | Effective Interest Rate | Accrual | Linked Entities | Collateral-Netting | Change Log | Revision Details | Repo | Reverse Repo | Settlement | Split | Messages | Interest | Charges |

Input By
Date Time
Contract Status

Checker
Date Time
Authorization Status

Exit

2. On **Securities Repo Contract** screen, specify the fields.

The base number of the counterparty (customer)

- The currency of the contract
- The principal amount (for a deal with True Discounted interest, the user must enter the nominal).
- Securities pledged detail for repo
- Securities received detail for reverse repo
- The credit line under which the reverse repo has to be tracked
- The tenor related details for the deal
- The code of the broker involved
- The dealer involved
- The default settlement account
- The maturity details
- The interest details
- Whether the deal is rolled over

The following details displayed cannot be changed:

- Product type
- Default tax scheme
- Schedule payment method
- Interest type Rollover count

Table 3.18: Security Repo Contract - Field Description

Field	Description
Product Code	This is a mandatory field Click the search icon and select the Product code from the list of options displayed.
Product Description	The description of the selected product code is displayed.
Source	Indicate the source from which contracts have to be uploaded. If this value is left null, then the user will not be able to amend the contract. Amendment for the contract can be uploaded only through the same source as that used for creation.
Dealer	Select the Dealer involved in the deal from the list
Broker	Select the Broker involved in the deal from the list
Deal Input Time	This field captures the deal execution time at the time of deal booking received from front office. Format: YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS:SSS (Default). Here SSS is milliseconds. NOTE: The above date format can be changed in the user setting option based on requirement. System throws an error when the user gives the wrong date or time format on modification.
Reject Reason	Specify the Reject reason Code for payment reversal message. The option list displays all valid code maintained in the system. Choose the appropriate one.

Field	Description
Contract Reference Number	The Contract Reference Number identifies the deal. It is automatically generated by the system for each deal. It is a combination of the branch code, the product code, the date on which the deal is booked (in Julian format) and a running serial number for the booking date. The Reference Number consists of a three-digit branch code, a four-character product code, a five-digit Julian Date and a four-digit serial number. The Julian Date has the following format: “YYDDD” Here, YY stands for the last two digits of the year. and DDD for the number of days (s) that has/have elapsed in the year. For example, 31 January 1998 translates into the Julian Date: 98031. Similarly, 5 February 1998 becomes 98036 in the Julian format. Here, 036 is arrived at by adding the number of days elapsed in January with those that elapsed in February (31+5=36).
User Reference Number	The user can enter any reference number for a deal that the user enter. The deal is identified through this number in addition to the Contract Reference Number generated by the system. No two deals can have the same User Reference Number. By default, the Contract Reference Number generated by the system is taken as the User Reference Number. The user can use this number, besides the deal Reference Number, to retrieve information relating to a deal.
External reference Number	If the transaction is being uploaded from an external source, the user can specify the identification for the transaction in the external source, as the external reference number. The user cannot amend this value post contact save.
Reversed Reference Number	The reference number of the contract that is being reversed and rebooked is displayed here. To enable amendment of SR Contract details Oracle Banking Treasury Management will reverse the old contract and rebook a new contract with the old user reference number and external reference number. The old contract is reversed and a new contract is booked with Reversed FCC ref as the parent contract.
Outstanding Amount	The system displays the total amount due as of the value date.
Customer Number	This is a mandatory field. Select the customer number from the list of values displayed.
Customer Name	The associated customer name from the selected customer number is displayed.
Currency	This is a mandatory field. Select the currency from the list of values displayed.

Field	Description
Amount	This is a mandatory field. Specify the Amount details as per requirement. If a product has bearing or discounted type of interest, the user must enter the principal of the deal in this screen. For a deal involving a true discounted product, the user must enter the face value (nominal) of the deal. The user can enter “T” or “M” to indicate thousands or millions, respectively. For example, 10T means 10,000 and 10M means 10 million. Amendment to this field is considered a financial amendment. NOTE: The amount, which the user enter, would be taken to be in the currency that the user specify as the deal currency.
Local Currency Amount	If the deal amount is in foreign currency, the system displays the equivalent local currency amount.
Line	By default, the user will view the Reverse Repo credit line defined for the customer. The user can change over to another authorized credit line if the user wants to track the Reverse repo under a different line. During upload, the credit lines for the given Counterparty, Product, Branch, Currency combination are fetched by the system. If there is only one credit line available, the system will display it here. If there are multiple lines found, the field is left blank.
Liability No	Displays the customer linked liabilities.
Interest Basis	The method in which the number of days are to be calculated for interest, charge, commission or fee components and whether their application is tenor based is displayed here based on the specification the user made at the product level. The user can choose to change it. The following are the options available: • 30(Euro)/360 • 30(US)/ 360 • Actual/360 • 30(Euro)/365 • 30(US)/365 • Actual/365 • 30(Euro)/Actual • 30(US)/Actual • Actual/Actual • 30(Euro)/364 • 30(US)/ 364 • Actual/364 The value of interest basis maintained here is used for calculating interest for repo contract.

Field	Description
Payment Method	The payment method defined for the main interest for the product (whether bearing, discounted or true discounted) applies to the contract as well. The method defined for the product is displayed here. • Bearing: Interest is liquidated on schedule payment date(s). • Discounted: In this interest payment method, the interest is deducted at the time of initiating the deal. • True discounted: In this interest payment method, the interest is calculated on the principal of the deal and not on the nominal. All the same, like the discounted method, here too, it is deducted from the principal at the time of initiation of the deal.
Schedule Type	If the user has defined repayment schedules for a product, which is applied to a deal involving the product, automatically. However, the user can change the schedule while processing a deal under the product. When a deal for which the repayment schedules a changed is rolled over, the new deal can have the repayment schedules defined for the product, or the schedules for the deal.
Tax Scheme	The tax scheme, which has been specified for the product, is displayed in this screen. The tax scheme cannot be changed at the time of deal processing.

Field	Description
Contract Derived Status	The status of placement is indicative of the status of repayments on it. If the user has specified automatic status movement for the placement, it is moved automatically to the status, as per your definition. However, if the user indicates the status change is made manually on the placement, the user can change the status manually in this screen. Even if the user has defined placement with automatic status movement, the user can still change the status manually before the automatic status change is due. There is another scenario, where the user has defined placement with automatic status moving forward, but manual status movement in the reverse direction. That is, when the conditions for placement being in a particular status no longer exist, if the user has specified manual reverse movement, then the user has to move the placement to the appropriate status manually. A placement on which the latest repayment has been made is in the Active status. If a payment is outstanding on a placement, its status is changed, based on your requirements of reporting placements with outstanding payments. The different status codes applicable for placement are defined for a product, and it applies to the placement, by default. However, the user can change the status of the contract through this screen. When the user captures the placement details, the system allows the status Active by default. The user may change it to any of the status codes as per your requirement. While doing manual status change, ensure the status order as defined. For example, the status codes are defined as follows, in that order: • Active • Past Due • Non-accrual • Write-off The user cannot change the status of placement from Active to Non-accrual, bypassing Past Due. If the requirement is that the placement has to be put in the Non-accrual status from the Active status, the user must first change the status to Past Due, store and authorize this status change and then change it to the Non-accrual status. If a status change is defined with a change in the GL, the entries are passed for the GL movement.
Remarks	The user can enter information describing the deal that the user is processing. This is available when the user retrieve information on the deal. However, this information will not be printed on any advice printed for the customer's benefit. This information is displayed whenever the user retrieve information on the deal either as a display or in print.
Settlement Details	
Debit Branch	When selecting the settlement details of a deal, the user must specify the debit account Branch.
Debit Account	Specify the account to be debited for the money market deal.
Debit Account Description	The system displays the description of the specified debit account number based on the details maintained at 'Customer Account Maintenance' level.

Field	Description
Credit Branch	When selecting the settlement details of a deal, the user must specify the credit account branch.
Credit Account	Specify the account to be credited for the money market deal.
Credit Account Description	The system displays the description of the specified credit account number based on the details maintained at 'Customer Account Maintenance' level.
Liquidation	When setting up a product, the user specify the mode of liquidation, whether automatic or manual, for the different components of a deal. By default, all deals involving the product will inherit this definition. However, the user can change the mode of liquidation, from automatic to manual, or vice versa, while processing a deal. Select the type of the Liquidation required. The options are: • Auto • Manual
Rollover Allowed	Select the option if the Rollover is required or not. While setting up a product, if the user specify the deals involving the product are automatically rolled over, all deals involving the product are rolled over on their respective Maturity Dates, if they are not liquidated. This feature is called auto rollover. If the auto rollover is specified for the product, the deal involves, it is indicated on this screen. However, if the user does not want the deal (whose details are being captured) to be rolled over, the user can disallow rollover for the deal. If rollover has been disallowed for a product, the user cannot rollover deals involving the product. NOTE: For rollover to be applicable for the deal, it has to be defined for the product.
Dates and Maturity	
Original Start Date	For a deal that has been rolled over, this is the date on which the deal was originally initiated. If a deal has been rolled over more than once, this is the date on which the first deal was initiated. If the users enter a deal that has already been initiated, the user must enter the date on which the deal began. In this case, the date is for information purposes only and for all accounting purposes the Value Date is considered as the date on which the deal was initiated.
Booking Date	The date on which the deal details are entered would be displayed in this screen. This defaults to the system date (today's date). This date is for information purposes only. The accounting entries are passed as of the Value Date of the deal (initiation date of the deal). Amendment to this field is considered a financial amendment

Field	Description
Value Date	This is the date on which a deal takes effect. The accounting entries for the initiation of the deal is passed as of this date. The tenor of the deal will begin from this date, and all calculations for interest and all the other components based on tenor is made from this date onwards. The system defaults to today's date. The user can enter a Value Date of your choice here. The date that the user enter is any one of the following: • Today's date • A date in the past • A date in the future (the user can enter a date in the future only if Future Dating has been allowed for the product). The Value Date must not be earlier than the Start Date or later than the End Date defined for the product involved in the deal. In case of a child rolled over the contract, this value is the same as the maturity date of the parent contract. If the liquidation date for any component falls before today's date, the liquidation entries (as defined by the user for the product) is passed if the user has specified for the product. If the Maturity Date of a deal is earlier than today, maturity entries are passed. Once the deal details have been stored and authorized, this date is amended, if the deposit has a bearing type of interest and NO schedule has been liquidated. Modification to this field is considered as a financial amendment. An override is sought if the Value Date falls on a holiday, in the country of the deal currency.
User Maturity Date	Change the maturity date of the deal here, based on the requirement.
Maturity Date	If the Maturity Type is fixed (that is, the Maturity Date of the deal is known when the deal is initiated) specify the Maturity Date. This date must be later than the Start Date of the product. If the product has a Default Tenor, this date is defaulted based on the tenor and the From date of the contract. If the user change this date, an override must be provided while saving the deal. For a deal with Call or Notice type of maturity, the Maturity Date is not entered at the time of deal booking. The user can get this date updated through value dated amendment. This date must be later than the Start Date of the product. If the product has a Default Tenor, this date is defaulted based on the tenor and the From date of the contract. If the user has specified auto liquidation for the deal, liquidation is done automatically on that date. If manual liquidation has been specified, the user will have to liquidate the deal through the Manual Liquidation function manually. For a deal with Fixed Maturity Type, this date can either be extended or brought backwards through the Value Dated Changes function, once the deal has been initiated.
Notice Days	For a contract maturing at notice, the user must enter the notice period (in days). This is for information purposes only. When the notice to repay is issued to the counterparty, the user must indicate the Maturity Date of the deal using value dated amendment screen.

Field	Description
Intra Day	For Intra-day deals, the system populates the intra-day deal date in this field. The intra-day deal date is populated as value date +1. Only the user can enter intra-day deals using a product meant for intra-day deals (as set in the Product Preferences).
Tenor	If the product has a Default Tenor, this tenor is defaulted based on the tenor. On overriding this maturity date will get adjusted.
Maturity Type	Select the Maturity type from the options as required. The Options available are: • Fixed • Notice • Call
Rounding Details	
Rounding Required	Select the checkbox if the Rounding process is required
Rounding Rule	Select the Rounding Rule from the drop-down box.
Decimals	Specify the decimal point to be rounded.
Units	Specify the Units to be rounded.
Reporting Details	
Currency	Select the reporting currency from the option list.
Amount	The system displays the amount.
Outstanding Amount	The system displays the total amount due as of the value date.

3. On **Security Repo Contract Online** screen, click **Schedules**

The contract inherits the schedule details from the associated product where the changes are allowed at the contract level.

STEP RESULT: **Security Repo Contract Online - Schedules Tab** details is displayed.

Figure 3.19: Security Repo Contract Online - Schedules Tab

Securities Repo Contract Online

Save Hold

Product Code *

Product Description

Source

Dealer

Broker

Deal Input Time

Reject Reason

Version Number Of

Contract Reference Number *

User Reference Number

External Reference Number

Reversal reference Number

Outstanding Amount

Contract Schedules Rollover Preferences ESMA Details

Default

Explode

Contract Schedules

1 Of 1 Go

Type	Component	Start Date	Number	Frequency	Unit	Amount
☒ P				Bullet		

Events | Brokerage | Effective Interest Rate | Accrual | Linked Entities | Change Log | Revision Details | Repo | Reverse Repo | Settlement | Split | Messages

Input By Checker

Date Time Date Time

Contract Status Authorization Status

Cancel

- On the **Security Repo Contract Online - Schedules Tab** screen, click **Explode**.

STEP RESULT: **Payment Schedule Details** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.20: Payment Schedule Details

Payment Schedule Details

Schedule Summary

1 Of 1 Go

☐	Due date	Pay Receive	Currency	Total amount Due	Total Amount Settled	Total Amount Adjusted	Subsidy Amount	Settlement Date
--------------------------	----------	-------------	----------	------------------	----------------------	-----------------------	----------------	-----------------

Schedule Details

1 Of 1 Go

☐	Component	Pay Receive	Amount Due	Amount Settled	Adjusted Amount	Subsidy Amount	Back Value Adjustment Amount
--------------------------	-----------	-------------	------------	----------------	-----------------	----------------	------------------------------

Interest Rate Details

1 Of 1 Go

☐	Calculation Date	Rate Type	Rate Code	Principal Basis	Base Rate	Weighted Average Rate	Base Index Rate	Spread / Margin
--------------------------	------------------	-----------	-----------	-----------------	-----------	-----------------------	-----------------	-----------------

Amount Settled

1 Of 1 Go

☐	Input Date	Value Date	Amount Settled	LCY Equivalent Settled
--------------------------	------------	------------	----------------	------------------------

Schedule Dates

Exit

5. On the **Payment Schedule Details** screen, refer to the provided payment schedule break-up. The following details are available:

Table 3.19: Schedule Breakup

Field	Description
Schedule Summary	• Due Date after applying payment delay • Pay Receive • Currency • Total Amount Due • Total Amount Settled • Total Amount Adjusted • Subsidy • Amount

Field	Description
Schedule Details	• Component • Pay Receive • Amount Due • Amount Settled • Adjusted Amount • Subsidy Amount • Back Value Adjusted Amount
Interest Rate Details	• Calculation Date • Rate Type • Rate Code • Principal Basis • Base Rate • Base Index Rate • Spread/Margin • Spread Adjustment • No. of Days • Compound Interest • Simple Interest • Total Interest • Cumulative Interest • Rate Pickup Date
Amount Settled	• Input Date • Value Date • Amount Settled • LCY Equivalent Settled

6. On the **Security Repo Contract Online - Schedules Tab** screen, specify the details as required.
For information on fields, see the table below:

Table 3.20: Schedules Tab- Field Description

Field	Description
Contract Schedules	
Type	Specify the Type of schedule maintained for the contract.

Field	Description
Component	Specify the Component for which schedule is build.
Start Date	Specify the start date of the schedule.
Number	Specify the number of schedule for each component.
Frequency	Select the schedule frequency from drop down value • Bullet • Daily • weekly • Monthly • half yearly • Quarterly • Yearly
Unit	Specify the Units for each frequency
Amount	System defaults the component amount for each schedule
Contract Linkages	
Type	Specify the Contract linkage type
Linked To Account	Specify the linked account
Currency	System defaults the currency linked to the account
Available Amount	System defaults the available balance of the linked account
Exchange Rate	System defaults the currency exchange rate
Linked Amount	Specify the linked amount.

7. On **Security Repo Contract Online** screen, click **Rollover**.

STEP RESULT: **Security Repo Contract Online - Rollover Tab** details is displayed.

Figure 3.21: Security Repo Contract Online - Rollover Tab

8. On the **Security Repo Contract Online - Rollover Tab** screen, specify the details as required.
 For more information on Rollover process, refer to: [3.22 Roll over a deal](#)
 For information on fields, see the below table:

Table 3.21: Security Repo Contract Online - Rollover Tab - Field Description

Field	Description
Rollover Amount	Specify the option for the Rollover Amount from the drop down list as required. The options are: - Principal - Principal + Interest - Principal + (Interest - tax)
Special Rollover Amount	Specify the special amount if applicable

Field	Description
Treat Special Amount As	If the Special amount is specified, from the following options specify the what must it be treated as: • Rollover Amount • Liquidation Amount • Maximum Rollover Amount • Ignore
Daily Refinance Rate	Specify the refinance rate as per the requirement.
Rollover	
Roll By	Select the option from the drop-down list. The options available are: • Days • Months • Quarters • Semiannual • Years
Method	Select the Method from the drop-down list. The options available are: • Normal • Split • Consolidated
Mechanism	Select the Mechanism from the drop-down list. The options available are: • New Version • Spawn Contract • Linked Contract
Mode	Select the Mode as required. The options are: • Auto • Manual
ICCF Rollover	Select the ICCF Rollover details as required: The options are: • Product • Contract

Field	Description
Schedule Basis	Select the Schedule Basis details as required. The options are: • Product • Contract
Preferences	
Apply charge on Rollover Amount	Select this Check box if charge is applied on Rollover
New Components Allowed	Select this Check box if new component is allowed for the rolled over contract
Liquidate Overdue Schedules	Select this Check box to liquidate over due schedules on rollover
Apply Tax on Rollover Amount	The user must indicate if the tax must be applied on the rolled over deal.
Update Limits Utilization	Whether the credit limit utilization is to be updated when a reverse repo deal is rolled over, that is, the interest that has been accrued on reverse repo is also considered as a part of the 'utilized amount' for the purpose of risk tracking. This option applies only if the user wants to roll over a deal with interest.
Maturity	
Maturity Days	Specify the new maturity days for rolled over contract.
Maturity Date	Specify the new Maturity date for the rolled over contract.
Maturity Type	Select the Maturity Type as required. The options available are: • Fixed • Notice • Call
Interest Basis	
Component	System defaults the component which is to be rolled over.
Basis	Select the option from the drop-down list as required. The options available are: • Product • Contract • User Rate

Field	Description
Rate Type	Select the rate type from the drop-down list. The options available are: • Fixed • Floating
Code Usage	Select the Code Usage from the drop-down list. The options available are: • Auto • Periodic
Interest Basis	Select the Interest Basis from the drop-down list. The options available are: • 30-Euro/360 • 30(US)/360 • Actual/360 • 30(Euro)/365 • 30(US)/365 • Actual/365 • 30-Euro/Actual • 30(US)/Actual • Actual
Rate Code	Specify the new rate code for rolled over contract when the basis is user
Spread	Specify the new spread for the rolled over contract when the basis is user
Margin	Specify the new margin for the rolled over contract when the basis is user
Amount	Specify the new Interest amount for the rolled over contract when the BASIS is user.
Tenor	Specify the new tenor for the rolled over contract

9. On **Security Repo Contract Online** screen, click **Preferences**.

Preferences are options. For instance, for a product, the users have the option of:

- Making liquidation automatic or manual
- Allowing or disallowing rollover
- Applying tax or waiving it
- Applying prepayment penalty or waiving it etc
- Generation of Deliver verse Payment message
- Generation of Receive verse payment message
- Giving Cash margin details

STEP RESULT: **Security Repo Contract Online - Preference Tab** details is displayed.

Figure 3.22: Securities Repo Contract Online - Preferences tab

Securities Repo Contract Online

Save Hold

Product Code *

Version Number Of

Product Description

Contract Reference Number *

User Reference Number

External Reference Number

Reversal reference Number

Outstanding Amount

Source

Dealer

Broker

Deal Input Time

Reject Reason

Contract Schedules Rollover **Preferences** ESMA Details

Holiday Treatment

☐ Cascade Schedules

☐ Move Across Months

☐ Move Payment Schedule

☐ Move Revision Schedules

☐ Move Forward

☐ Move Backward

Track Receivable

☐ Manual Liquidation

☐ Partial Manual Liquidation

☐ Automatic Liquidation

Others

☐ Liquidate Back Valued Schedules

☐ Net Negative Interest

Loan Statement

Cycle Annual

Of

Statement Type ☐ None ☐ Detailed ☐ Summary

Events Brokerage Effective Interest Rate Accrual Linked Entities Change Log Revision Details Repo Reverse Repo Settlement Split Messages

Input By Checker

Date Time

Authorization Status

Cancel

10. On the **Preferences** tab, specify the details as required.

For information on fields, see the table below:

Table 3.22: Securities Repo Contract Online - Preference Tab - Field Description

Field	Description
Holiday Treatment	

Field	Description
Cascading schedules	Select this check box, if one schedule is moved backwards or forward because of a holiday, the other schedules are accordingly shifted. If the user does not want to cascade schedules, then, only the schedule, which falls on a holiday, is shifted as specified and the others will remain as they were.
Move Across Months	Select this check box, if the user needs to move a schedule falling due on holiday either forward or backwards to the next or previous working day and it crosses over into a different month, then the system moves the scheduled date. If not, scheduled date is kept in the same month, on the last or first working day of the month, depending on whether the schedule is over the month-end or the beginning of the month.
Move Payment Schedule	Select this box, if user needs to move the payment schedule. When the system computes the repayment date, there is a chance that one or more schedules fall due on holiday.
Move Revision Schedules	Select this box, if user needs to move the Revision schedule falling on a holiday
Move Forward	Check against this field to indicate that the schedule of the contract must be moving forward to the next working day.
Move Backward	Check against this field to indicate that the scheduled date of the contract is moved back to the previous working day.
Others	
Liquidate Back Valued Schedules	Select this checkbox to define the product, that a back-dated deal with repayment schedules before today's date, the schedules are liquidated when the deal is initiated, the same will apply to the deal the user is entering. However, through this, the user can choose not to liquidate back valued schedules.
Net Negative Interest	Check this box to indicate that the system should internally net the positive and negative amounts being paid to the customer during interest liquidation.
Track Receivable	
Manual Liquidation	Select this option to track receivables during manual liquidation. In case of manual payments, the system will display an override if sufficient funds are not available in the settlement account. If the user say Yes to the override, the system will mark the fund as a receivable amount.
Partial Manual Liquidation	During manual liquidation, if sufficient funds are not available in the settlement account of the contract, the user can opt to make a partial payment. In this case, the deal is liquidated to the extent of the amount available in the account. The balance due is tracked as a receivable amount. During EOD processing of the contracts, based on the availability of funds, the deal is liquidated. This process will continue until the deal is recovered fully. The deal is in the active status till full liquidation happens. If the user does not choose to make a partial payment, then the entire amount that is being manually paid are tracked as a receivable against the settlement account.

Field	Description
Automatic Liquidation	Select this option if the user want to track receivables during automatic liquidation.
Loan Statement	
Cycle	Specify the cycle on which loan statement must be generated
Statement Type	The Options available are • None • Detailed • Summary
External Interface Details	
External Reference	System updates the external reference number
Parent Reference	System updates the parent reference number
REPO	
Delivery Verse Payment	Select this checkbox to Generate MT543/MT541 message on Repo Booking and liquidation.
Reverse Repo	
Receive Verse Payment	Select this checkbox to Generate MT541/MT543 message on Repo Booking and liquidation.
Settlement Message Generation Details	
Settlement Message Generation Required	Select this checkbox, to settle message generation required.
Demand Basis	Select the option from the drop-down list. The options are: • SGEN • Billing Notice
Cash Margin	
Margin Account	Specify the value from the list of values displayed. The Options available are GL or CASA account for cash margin transaction. NOTE: This is a Mandatory field if collateral revaluation preference is margin settlement at SR Product.
Account Currency	Specify the Currency of the account maintained. This is a Mandatory field if margin account is chosen
Account Branch	Specify the branch of the account maintained. This is a Mandatory field if margin account is chosen

11. On **Security Repo Contract Online** screen, click the **ESMA Details** tab.

STEP RESULT: **Security Repo Contract Online - ESMA Details** page is displayed.

Figure 3.23: Security Repo Contract Online - ESMA Details tab

Securities Repo Contract Online

Save Hold

Product Code * [?](#)

Product Description

Source

Dealer

Broker

Deal Input Time

Reject Reason

Contract Schedules Rollover Preferences **ESMA Details**

Report submitting entity [?](#)

Description [?](#)

Entity responsible for the report [?](#)

Description

Trading venue [?](#)

Agreement type [?](#)

Other agreement type

☐ Centrally cleared

Events | Brokerage | Effective Interest Rate | Accrual | Linked Entities | Change Log | Revision Details | Repo | Reverse Repo |

Input By

Date Time

Contract Status

Checker

Date Time

Authorization Status

Cancel

12. On the **Securities Repo Contract Online** screen, click **ESMA Details** tab and specify the ESMA details as required.

STEP RESULT: The **ESMA Details** page is displayed.

Figure 3.24: Securities Repo Contract Online - ESMA Details

Securities Repo Contract Online

New Enter Query

Product Code * _____

Product Description _____

Source _____

Dealer _____

Broker _____

Deal Input Time _____

Reject Reason _____

Version Number ◀ _____ Of ▶ _____

Contract Reference Number * _____

User Reference Number _____

External Reference Number _____

Reversal reference Number _____

Outstanding Amount _____

Contract | Schedules | Rollover | Preferences | **ESMA Details**

Report submitting entity _____

Description _____

Entity responsible for the report _____

Description _____

Clearing member _____

Description _____

CSD participant code _____

Description _____

Agent lender _____

Description _____

Clearing TimeStamp _____

CCP _____

Description _____

Centrally cleared ☐

Trading venue _____

Agreement type _____

Other agreement type _____

Master agreement version _____

Earliest call back date yyyy-MM-dd _____

General collateral indicator _____

Deliver by value ☐

Collateral method _____

Collateral Description _____

Termination optionality _____

Collateralization of net exposure ☐

Hair Cut % _____

Collateral quality _____

Collateral type _____

Availability for collateral reuse ☐

Events | Brokerage | Effective Interest Rate | Accrual | Linked Entities | Change Log | Revision Details | Repo | Reverse Repo | Settlement | Split | Messages | Interest | ^

Input By _____

Date Time _____

Contract Status _____

Checker _____

Date Time _____

Authorization Status _____

Exit

For more information on fields, refer to [Table 3.23: Securities Repo Contract Online - ESMA Details Tab - Field Description](#)

Table 3.23: Securities Repo Contract Online - ESMA Details Tab - Field Description

Field	Description
Report submitting entity	Specify the unique code from the displayed list of values for identifying the reporting counterparty.
Description	The system displays the description of the selected report submitting entity.
Entity responsible for the report	Specify the unique code from the displayed list of values for identifying the financial counterparty responsible for reporting on behalf of the other counterparty.
Description	The system displays the description of the selected entity responsible for the report
Clearing member	Specify the unique code from the displayed list for identifying the responsible clearing member of the reporting counterparty.
Description	The system displays the description of the selected clearing member.
CSD participant code	Specify the unique code of the CSD participant or indirect participant of the reporting counterparty from the displayed list, where both the CSD participant and indirect participant are involved in the transaction. NOTE: This CSD Participant Code field is not applicable to commodities.
Description	The system displays the description of the selected CSD participant.
Agent lender	Specify the unique code of the agent lender involved in the securities lending transaction.
Description	The system displays the description of the selected agent lender .
Clearing timestamp	Specify the time and date when clearing took place, where the contract is cleared.
CCP	Specify the unique code of central clearing counterparty (CCP) that cleared the contract.
Description	The system displays the description of the selected CCP.
Centrally cleared	Select the Centrally cleared check box to clear the trade centrally.
Trading venue	Specify the unique code for identifying the venue of execution of the SFT. Where the SFT was concluded over the counter (OTC) and the respective collateral is admitted to trading, MIC code 'XOFF' is used.
Agreement type	Specify the unique code for identifying the master Agreement type under which the counterparties concluded a documented SFT.
Other agreement type	Enter the name of the master agreement in this field. NOTE: This field is applicable, if OTHR is selected in Agreement type field.
Master agreement version	The user must enter year of the master agreement version used for the reported trade. NOTE: This field is applicable, if OTHR is selected in Agreement type field.
Earliest call back date	Specify the Earliest call back date that the cash lender has the right to call back a portion of the funds or to terminate the transaction.

Field	Description
General collateral indicator	Select the SFT associated to a general collateral arrangement from the drop-down list. The drop-down list shows the following options: • SPEC – Specific Collateral • GENE – General Collateral
Deliver by value	Select the Deliver by value to settle the transaction by using DBV mechanism.
Collateral method	Specify the unique code from the list of values for identifying whether the collateral in the SFT is subject to a title transfer collateral arrangement, a security financial collateral arrangement, or a security financial collateral arrangement with the right of use.
Description	The description of the selected collateral transfer method is specified.
Termination optionality	Select the Termination optionality from the drop-down list. The drop-down list shows the following options: • Evergreen • Extendable Indicates whether the counterparties to the SFT is extendable or evergreen.
Collateralization of net exposure	Select the Collateralization of net exposure check box for net exposure. Indicates whether the collateral has been provided for a net exposure, rather than for a single transaction.
Haircut	Specify the collateral haircut value in percentage. Collateral haircut, a risk control measure applied to the underlying collateral at ISIN level, whereby the value of that underlying collateral is calculated as the market value of the assets reduced by a certain percentage.
Collateral quality	Select the collateral quality from the drop-down list. The drop-down list shows the following options: • Investment Grade • Non Investment Grade • Non-Rated Indicates the risk of security classification as a collateral.
Collateral type	Specify the unique code from the displayed list for identifying the type of collateral.
Availability for collateral reuse	Select the Availability for collateral reuse check box to reuse the securities. Indicates whether the collateral taker can reuse the securities provided as a collateral.

Modify a Repo or a Reverse Repo

There are two types of modifications that the user can make on a contract:

- Those that affect the financial details of the contract.

- Those that do not affect the financial details of the contract

(**Financial details** include the accounting entries that have already been passed or the advices that have already been generated). For example, the changes made to the User Reference Number, Auto Rollover and Auto Liquidation flags, do not change to the accounting entries that have been passed.

However, the inputs to some fields that contain financial information are changed only under specific circumstances. This is done through the Value Dated Changes function. For example, the changes in the interest rate, increase in the principal, etc., is made only through the Value Dated Changes function.

A deal on which the previous activity has been saved but not been authorized is modified. For example, the user has captured the details of a deal. The details are saved but not yet authorized when the user realizes that some of the details have been wrongly entered. The user can unlock the contract to make the modifications and Save it. The uploaded contracts are amended by any valid user – the contract maker or others.

NOTE: Any type of change, however, has to be authorized, before it takes effect.

Financial Details available for Change

Inputs to the following fields available for change based on the requirement through the contract processing function:

- Takedown Account if the reverse repo has not yet been initiated and Customer Account if a repo has not been initiated.
- Maturity Account if the deal is yet to mature
- Interest Payment Account if the entire interest on the deal has not yet been liquidated. The new account is used for future interest payments.
- Contract End Date for a notice or call type of deal.
- Tax details if tax has not yet been liquidated

NOTE: The changes listed do not trigger any accounting entries or the generation of any advices.

View Event Details

This topic provides the systematic instructions to view the event details.

View all the events that have to take place on a Securities Repo deal through the View Events screen.

All the events that taken place on the deal so far are listed in this screen according to the sequence in which they have taken place. The Date on which the event took place will also be displayed.

- Access this screen by clicking on the view events button in any of the Contract On-line screens.
- View the list containing events like Booking, Initiation, Interest Accrual, etc

13. On **Security Repo Contract Online** screen, click **Events**

STEP RESULT: **Treasury Events** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.25: Treasury Events

The screenshot shows the 'Treasury Events' application window. At the top, there's a search bar with the text 'Enter Query' and a 'Reference Number *' field. Below the search bar, there's a table with the following columns: Event Number, Event Code, Description, Event Date, Authorization Status, Maker Id, and Checker Id. The table indicates '1 Of 1' records. At the bottom of the window, there are links for 'Accounting Entries' and 'Messages', and an 'Exit' button.

14. On the **Treasury Events** screen, specify the details as required.
For information on fields, see the below table:

Table 3.24: Treasury Events - Field Description

Field	Description
Reference Number	This is a mandatory field. Payment reference number automatically gets defaulted for the current payment.
Events	
Event Number	This is a Mandatory field.
Event Code	Displays the contract event code
Description	Displays the Event description
Event Date	Displays the Date on which event is generated
Authorization Status	Displays the event authorization status
Maker Id	Displays the maker ID
Checker Id	Display the Checker ID

15. On the **Treasury Events** screen, click **Accounting Entries**.
Treasury Accounting Entries screen is displayed.

Figure 3.26: Treasury Accounting Entries

16. On the **Treasury Accounting Entries** screen, specify the details as required.
For information on fields, see the below table:

Table 3.25: Treasury Accounting Entries - Field Description

Field	Description
Reference Number	This is a mandatory field. Displays the contract reference number
Event Number	This is a mandatory field. Displays the event number
Event	This is a mandatory field. Displays the event code
Accounting Entries	
Event	Displays the Event code for the contract
Branch	Display the Account branch
Account	Displays the Account number
Account Description	Displays the Account Description
Debit or Credit	Displays whether the account is Dr or Cr
Amount Tag	Displays the amount tag associated to the event
Account Currency	Displays the account currency
Foreign Currency Amount	Displays the Foreign currency amount
Rate	Displays the exchange rate
Local Currency Amount	Displays the Local currency equivalent amount when the contract currency is in FCY currency
Date	Displays the Transaction date

Field	Description
Value Date	Displays the value date of the event
Txn Code	Displays the transaction Code

17. On the **Treasury Accounting Entries** screen, click **Overrides**.

STEP RESULT: **Treasury Accounting Entries** screen with **Overrides** tab details is displayed.

Figure 3.27: Treasury Accounting Entries - Overrides

18. On the **Overrides** tab, specify the details as required.

For more information on fields, see the below table:

Table 3.26: Overrides - Field Description

Field	Description
Reference Number	Displays the contract reference number
Event Number	Displays the event number
Event	Displays the event code
Overrides	Displays the Override message generated for the event
Override Status	Displays the override status
Authorized By	Displays the Authorizer user ID
Auth Date Stamp	Displays the authorization Time stamp

Advice for Deal Initiation

The advices that have to be generated for any event are specified for the product involved in the deal and are generated after the product is authorized at the product level. For example, the user may have specified the following advices for the product:

- When a deal is initiated, advice, addressed to the customer.

- If any components (like discounted interest, tax on principal etc.) Are liquidated on take-down, advice for each of them.

While processing the deal initiation, the user can do the following:

- Suppress the generation of any of these advices
- Specify the priority of generation

19. On the **Treasury Events** screen, click **Messages**.

STEP RESULT: **Treasury Message** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.28: Treasury Message

20. On the **Treasury Message** screen, specify the details as required.

For information on fields, see the below table:

Table 3.27: Treasury Message - Field Description

Field	Description
Contract Reference	Displays the contract reference number
Event Sequence Number	Displays the Event sequence number
Event	Displays the event code
Messages	
Message Type	Displays the Message Type
SWIFT Message Type	Displays the Swift Message Type
Sub Message Type	Displays the Sub Message Type
SWIFT Sub Message Type	Displays Swift Sub Message type
Test Status	Displays Test status
Medium	Displays message medium
Message Status	Displays the Message status

Field	Description
Authorization Status	Displays Message Authorization status
Receiver	Displays the Receiver of the message
Receiver Name	Displays the Receiver name of the message

21. On the **Treasury Message** screen, click **Message Details**.

STEP RESULT: **Treasury Message** screen with **Message Details** is displayed.

Figure 3.29: Treasury Message

The screenshot shows the 'Treasury Message' application window. At the top, there is a search bar labeled 'Enter Query'. Below it, several search filters are arranged in a grid:

- Reference Number (with a red 'DCN *' label)
- Receiver or Sender
- Sub Message Type
- Event Sequence Number or Version Number
- Message Type
- SWIFT Sub Message Type
- SWIFT Message Type

Below the filters is a large white area labeled 'Message' with a pagination indicator '1 Of 1' on the right. At the bottom of the screen, there are three input fields: 'Remarks', 'Reject Reason', and 'Message Trailers'. An 'Exit' button is located in the bottom right corner.

22. On **Treasury Message** screen, specify the details as required.
To view the text of a message, highlight the message and click Message Details. Click **Exit** or **Cancel** button to exit the screen.

Different Versions of a Deal

When a deal is an input, it is assigned a version number of 1. From then on, each amendment of the deal results in its next version. When the user comes to the Detailed View Screen for a deal, the latest version is displayed.

To see the previous version, click the previous icon from a previous version, clicking next icon displays the next version.

Initiate a Future Value Dated Deal

A “future-dated” deal is one that has a Value Date that is later than the date on which it is booked. The Automatic Contract Update function will initiate the deal on the Value Date of the deal.

A future Value Date falling on a holiday is initiated either on the previous working day or the next, depending on your definition for automatic processing at your branch.

All the initiation related entries specified for the product involved in the deal is passed automatically. If currency conversions are involved, the conversion rates as of the date on which the deal is initiated are picked up from the Currency Table. To recall, the rates that are applicable to a deal are defined for the product involved in the deal.

If there is a rate revision applicable for the future dated deal on the day it is initiated (that is, on the future Value Date), the rate revision will also be applied on the deal. This rate revision could either be due to a Floating Rate change or a Value Dated Change.

Display the Other Details of a Deal

Using the buttons that are displayed in the ‘Contract Online’ screens the user can view the following details of a deal:

- The settlement details
 - The tax details
 - The MIS details
 - The ICCB details
 - The brokerage details
23. On **Security Repo Contract Online** screen, click **Brokerage**.
Brokerage screen is displayed.

Figure 3.30: Brokerage

The screenshot shows the 'Brokerage' form with the following fields and sections:

- Contract Reference**: Text input field.
- Broker ***: Text input field, marked as mandatory.
- Broker Name**: Text input field.
- Rule**: Text input field.
- Payable**: Section containing:
 - Currency ***: Text input field, marked as mandatory.
 - Amount**: Text input field.
- Brokerage**: Section containing:
 - Currency ***: Text input field, marked as mandatory.
 - Amount ***: Text input field, marked as mandatory.
- Liquidation**: Section containing:
 - Status**: Dropdown menu.
 - Reference Number**: Text input field.
- Booking**: Section containing:
 - No Booking**: Radio button.
 - Advance**: Radio button.
 - Arrears**: Radio button.
 - Consider For Discount**: Radio button.

Buttons: **Ok** and **Exit** at the bottom right.

24. On **Brokerage** screen, specify the details as required.

For information on fields, see the below table:

Table 3.28: Brokerage - Field Description

Field	Description
Broker	This is a mandatory field. Defaults Broker ID mapped for the deal
Broker Name	Displays the Broker name
Rule	Defaults the Broker Rule mapped at the product
Payable	
Currency	Defaults Broker payable currency
Amount	Defaults the Broker amount to be paid
Brokerage	
Currency	Defaults the Broker currency
Amount	Defaults the Broker amount
Liquidation	
Status	Displays the brokerage liquidation status
Reference Number	Displays the brokerage liquidation reference number
Booking	
No Booking	To waive brokerage for the transaction, choose the 'No Booking' option.
Advance	Brokerage is booked when the deal is initiated

Field	Description
Arrears	Brokerage is booked when the deal is liquidated
Consider For Discount	This option is defaulted from the deal product level. However, checkbox is unchecked if the booking method is other than Advance .

25. On **Security Repo Contract Online** screen, click **Effective Interest Rate**.

STEP RESULT: **Effective Interest or Profit Rate** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.31: Effective Interest or Profit Rate

26. The processing related to Effective Interest Rate is as follows:
- During rate revision of contracts with negative interest allowed products, based on the effective interest rate after rate revision being positive or negative, the system assigns the interest rate to main interest or negative interest component internally.
 - If the effective rate is negative, the system updates the main interest component rate as zero and assigns the negative rate to negative interest component.
 - If negative interest is not allowed for the product, then the system skips rate revision for the contract, if the effective rate becomes negative. Exception is logged for the same. You need to initiate amendment of the spread such that net interest rate becomes positive in such cases.
 - If default minimum value is maintained for the main interest component, then the system defaults the same during rate revision, if the interest rate goes below the specified rate.
27. On the **Effective Interest or Profit Rate** screen, specify the details as required.
For Information on fields, see the below table

Table 3.29: Effective Interest or Profit Rate - Field Description

Field	Description
Contract Reference	Displays the Contract reference number.
Effective Date	Displays the effective date on which rate is revised.

Field	Description
Effective Interest/Profit Rate	Displays the Revised Effective interest rate.

28. On **Security Repo Contract Online** screen, click **Accrual**.

STEP RESULT: **Accrual** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.32: Accrual

29. On the **Accrual** screen, specify the details as required.

For information on fields, see the below table:

Table 3.30: Accrual - Field Description

Field	Description
Contract Reference	Displays the contract reference number
Component	Displays the accrual component
Effective date	Displays the effective date
Accrual Method	Displays the Accrual method
Amount	Displays the Accrual amount
Currency	Displays the Accrual currency

30. On **Security Repo Contract Online** screen, click **Linked Entities**.

STEP RESULT: **Linked Entities** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.33: Linked Entities

Linked Entities

1 Of 1 Go

☐	Customer	Description	Relationship	Include Relationship
--------------------------	----------	-------------	--------------	----------------------

Ok Exit

31. On the **Linked Entities** screen, specify the details as required.
 32. On **Security Repo Contract Online** screen, click **Change Log**.
- STEP RESULT: **Treasury View Changes** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.34: Treasury View Changes

Treasury View Changes

Execute Query

Contract Reference *
Previous Version No *
Event Sequence Number
Version No *

Change Log

1 Of 1 Go

☐	Field Description	Old Value	New Value
--------------------------	-------------------	-----------	-----------

Cancel

33. On the **Treasury View Changes** screen, specify the details as required.
- For information on fields, see the below table:

Table 3.31: Treasury View Changes - Field Description

Field	Description
Event Sequence Number	Displays the event sequence number
Version No	This is a mandatory field Displays the event version number
Field Description	Displays the modified field
Old Value	Displays the old value
New Value	Displays the New value

Interest Rate Revision Schedule

A Floating Rate Table containing the market rates for the day - is maintained in the ICCB sub-system so that the latest rates are applied to deals.

The market rates vary daily and are maintained in this table. The rates are applied either every time they change or at periodic intervals. Usually, for Securities Repo deals, floating rates are applied, i.e., the latest market rate is applied. The user can also apply these rates periodically so that the user is in tune with the market rates (as opposed to fixed interest rates which remain the same for the entire period of the deal), and at the same time, the user need not apply the market rates daily.

The user can specify if the latest market rates have to be applied every time they change or apply periodically by defining an attribute called the Rate Code Usage. The Rate code usage is applied through the Product ICCB Details screen for a floating interest type. If the user specifies **auto** rate code usage, all the rate changes made during the liquidation or accrual period is considered. If the user specifies **periodic** rate code usage, the rates are periodically refreshed and the rates as of a specific frequency, or date, is applied.

For a deal that has been defined with Periodic Interest that has to be applied at periodic intervals, the user can specify the following:

- The frequency at which the periodic rate change has to be applied.
- The dates on which the periodic rate change has to be applied

Specify the Rate Revision Frequency

In the SR Contract Schedules screen, select the component, for which the Rate Revision frequency has to be defined (say INTEREST1). Select the Type as 'R' (Revision), then enter your specifications in the frequency (it could be daily, weekly, etc.), the number, and unit fields. Also, give the Start Date on which the first revision has to take place.

For example, if the user specify the frequency, like weekly, the revision will take place every week beginning on the Start Date that the user has specified.

Specify the Rate Revision Dates

Instead of specifying the other schedule details like the frequency, the number and unit, indicate the date in the Start Date field. The rate revision is done on that date.

Interest Repayment Schedules as Different from Rate Revision Schedules

For a deal on which floating interest is applied at periodic intervals, the user may have to define:

- An interest rate revision schedule for the interest component.

- A repayment schedule.

The following example shows how this is achieved:

The user has a deal where for the component interest; the user has to define an interest rate revision schedule for revisions every week as well as a fortnightly interest repayment schedule. The Start Date of the deal is 1 October '97, and the End Date is 31 October '97. The deal is defined with a periodic rate and the rates in the floating rate table change in the following manner:

Table 3.32: Floating Rates

Date	Description
1 October '97	12
12 October '97	11.5
25 October '97	11
15 November '97	12
30 November '97	12.5

Define a frequency based rate revision schedule

To define a schedule with periodic rate code usage, through the Contract Schedules screen, mark the component as a revision schedule and specify the component, say INTEREST, from the pick list. Give the frequency at which

the interest rate has to be refreshed, say weekly. Give the Start Date, say 8 October. The first revision will happen on this day, and every week from then on. Save the inputs.

Define a date based rate revision schedule

If the user were to define specific dates - 7 October, 15 October and 23 October - for the rate revision to happen, then, through the Contract Schedules screen, mark the component as a revision schedule and specify the component, say INTEREST, from the pick list.

Specify the date on which the rate revision is to be done, in the Start Date field, as 7 October. Similarly, define the other dates, but by picking up the same component INTEREST from the pick list each time.

Define a repayment schedule for the same component

Now to define a repayment schedule for the same component, INTEREST, click schedules Tab and choose the component interest from the pick list. Now draw up a repayment schedule for this component. Give a value in the Start Date field, say 15 October 1997. The first interest liquidation will be done on this date.

In the frequency field enter 'monthly' and in the unit field specify '2'. This means the interest repayments will be done every fortnight beginning 15 October.

That is, for a deal defined with frequency-based periodic rates, the rates prevailing on the refresh dates will be used for accruals and liquidation. In the deal we are discussing, with the refresh frequency defined as weekly and the Start Date as 15 October, the rate applied for the interest liquidation on 15 October will be as follows:

Table 3.33: Interest liquidation on 15 October

From	To	Rate
1 October	8 October	12
9 October	15 October	11.5

For a deal with Periodic rate code usage (date based), the rates prevailing on the specific refresh dates will be used for accruals and liquidation. Shown below are the rates applicable on the specified revision dates.

Table 3.34: Rates Applicable

From	Rate Applicable
7 October	12
15 October	11.5
23 October	11.5

In the deal we are discussing, the rates applied for the interest liquidation on 15 October will be as follows:

Table 3.35: Interest Rates

From	To	Rate
1 October	7 October	12
8 October	14 October	12
15 October		11.5

34. On **Security Repo Contract Online** screen, click **Revision Details**.

STEP RESULT: **Revision Schedule Details** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.35: Revision Schedule Details

Revision Schedule Details

Contract Revision Schedules

1 Of 1 Go

Component	Rate Fixing Date	Rate Fixing Applied	Revision Date	Applied	Rate Code	Rate	Spread

Exit

35. On the **Revision Schedule Details** screen, specify the details as required.

For information on fields, see the below table:

Table 3.36: Revision Schedule Details - Field Description

Field	Description
Component	Specify the component for which the schedule is being defined. The options are • Principal • Fee • Commission • Charge or interest
Rate Fixing Date	Displays the derived Rate fixing date
Rate Fixing Applied	Displays whether Rate fixing is applied for the contract or not. Values - N, Y The system generates the SGEN only when the rate fixing applied option is Y for all the revision schedules.
Revision Date	Displays the revision date for the schedule
Revision Applied	Displays whether revision is applied or not Values - N, Y.
Rate Code	Displays the Floating Rate code mapped to the contract
Rate	Displays the Floating rate from the floating rate table
Spread	Displays the Rate Code spread for the contract
Customer Margin	Displays the customer margin

Field	Description
Effective Rate	Displays the Effective interest rate
Rate Source	Displays the Rate source from where the rate is taken

36. On **Security Repo Contract Online** screen, click **Interest**.

STEP RESULT: **ICCF** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.36: ICCF

Securities Repo Contract Online

ICCF

Contract Reference

Main View Details

1 Of 1

Component

Currency

Event

Rate Type

Maximum Rate

Minimum

Grace Period

No Interest/Profit

Rate

Rate Code

Spread Adjustment

Amount

Component Description

Accrued Amount

Event Description

Spread

Denominator Basis

Basis 366

Minimum Spread

Maximum Spread

Customer Margin

Effective Interest Rate

Waived

Discount

Negative Interest Allowed

External Pricing

Floating Rate Details

Interest/Profit Basis

Reset Tenor

Indicator

Fixing Date Movement

Rate Calculation Type

Code Usage

Rate Fixing Days

Alternative Risk-Free Rate

Alternative Risk-Free Rate Preferences

Lookback

Payment Delay

Lockout

Interest / Profit Rollover

Last Reset

Last Recent

Plain

Index Value

Rate Compounding

Observation Shift

Lookback Days

Payment Delay Days

Lockout Days

Computation Calendar

Financial Center

Base Computation Method

Spread/Margin Computation Method

Spread Adj Computation Method

Rate Compounding Method

RFR Rounding Unit

Payment Movement

Ok Exit

37. On **Interest** screen, specify the fields.

Table 3.37: Interest - Field Description

Field	Description
Contract Reference	Displays Contract reference number
Component	Displays the Interest component mapped to the contract

Field	Description
Currency	Displays the Interest component currency
Event	Display the Event associated with the component
Waived	Specify whether user wants to waive the interest
Rate Type	Select the Rate Type from the drop-down list. The options are: • Floating • Special • Fixed
Maximum Rate	Displays the maximum rate for the component
Minimum	Displays minimum rate for the component
Grace Period	Select the Grace Period from the drop-down list. The options are: • Months • Years • Days
Discount	Defaults discount flag from product
No Interest/Profit	Displays the contract Interest
Rate	Specify the contract Fixed interest rate. System defaults 'Default rate' from product. User can modify the same.
Rate Code	Defaults Floating rate code from product. User can modify the same.
Amount	Specify the special interest amount for the contract.
Spread Adjustment	Specify the Rate code spread adjustment.
Component Description	Display the component description.
Accrued Amount	Displays the Interest accrued amount
Event Description	Displays the Event description
Accrual Required	Specify if Interest accrual required or not
Spread	Specify the rate code spread for a floating interest rate
Denominator Basis	Denominator Basis is used to specify how the month of February is treated when the denominator is 'Actual'.
Basis 366	Defaults from product. This is applicable only if the Denominator Basis is set to 'Per Annum'.
Minimum Spread	Displays minimum spread for the floating rate code
Maximum Spread	Displays maximum spread for the floating rate code

Field	Description
Customer Margin	Specify the customer margin
Effective Interest Rate	Displays the effective interest rate of the contract
Negative Interest Allowed	Check this box to indicate that the negative interest should be allowed for the product. If this box is checked, then the system allows Negative fixed rates or resolved rates at the SR contract and during VAMI,
External Pricing	Defaults external pricing from product
Interest/Profit Basis	Defaults Interest Basis from product, which indicates the Interest basis for the component for which penalty is being computed
Reset Tenor	Floating interest rates are defined for specific amount slabs and tenor combinations. User can indicate the reset tenor for which floating rates need to be picked up.
Indicator	Defaults from product. The user can use this field to indicate whether the borrowing rate, lending rate or mid rate must be picked up from the floating rate table, for the specified rate code.
Fixing Date Movement	Defaults Rate fixing date movement from product. user can modify the same. The options are: • Backward movement • Forward movement
Rate Calculation Type	Defaults the rate calculation type from product
Code Usage	Specify the rate code usage. It can be periodic or automatic. In case of periodic user needs to define revision schedule for the floating interest component
Alternative Risk-Free Rate	Specify if the interest rate code is a risk free rate
Rate Fixing Days	Defaults the rate fixing days from product.

Field	Description
Interest/Profit Basis	The method in which the number of days are to be calculated for interest, charge, commission or fee components and whether their application is tenor based is displayed here based on the specification the user made at the product level. The User can choose to change it. The following are the options available: • 30(Euro)/360 • 30(US)/ 360 • Actual/360 • 30(Euro)/365 • 30(US)/365 • Actual/365 • 30(Euro)/Actual • 30(US)/Actual • Actual/Actual • 30(Euro)/364 • 30(US)/ 364 • Actual/364
Fixing Date Movement	Select the movements from the drop-down list. The available movements are: • Forward • Backward • None as per the requirement for the effective revision date.
Alternative Risk-Free Rate	Select the Alternate Risk-Free Rate check box to enable the Alternate Risk Free-Rate preferences. For more information on the Alternate Risk Free-Rate preferences fields, refer to Table 4.2: Treasury Interest Class Definition - Field Description.
Payment Movement	Select the payment movement calendar. The list displays the following values: • Calendar • Business If the option Calendar is selected, then the system skips the Holiday Preferences selected at the contract level. If the option Business is selected, it considers holiday treatment specified for schedule as per the Holiday Preferences selected at the contract level.

38. The processing and validations involved in this screen are as follows:
- Contract interest rate, irrespective of whether it is positive or negative, can be specified against main interest component only. Effective rate is displayed against Main Interest component only in both positive or negative cases. Internal allocation of the effective rate to negative interest component is done by the system.
 - Effective Interest rate is derived based on the interest rate (Fixed/ Floating) and Margin (Spread) value captured for the SR contract (Deal) in OBTR.
 - On a particular day, for a contract, only one interest component from main or negative components is active, based on the effective interest rate being positive or negative.
 - If negative rate or amount is specified, then the system validates that product is enabled for negative interest.
 - Negative Interest amount for 'Special Rate type' is not allowed
 - Special interest amounts will not be allowed in 'Interest Amount' of ICCF screen, for negative interest allowed SR contracts.
 - Negative interest amounts will not be allowed as 'Acquired Amount' in ICCF screen.
39. On the **Securities Repo Contract Online** screen, click **Split**.
STEP RESULT: **Split Settlement** Screen is displayed.

Figure 3.37: Split Settlement

40. On the **Split Settlement** screen, select a contract.
41. On the **Split Settlement** screen, under the Split Settlement Details, click the **+** Icon.
STEP RESULT: **Split Settlement** screen with New arrow is displayed.

Figure 3.38: Split Settlement with a new row added

The screenshot shows the 'Split Settlement' window. At the top, there is a 'Contract Reference' field. Below it, the 'Split Settlement' section contains a table with columns: Amount Tag, Currency, and Basis Amount. The first row is selected, and a new row has been added below it. The 'Split Settlement Details' section below contains a table with columns: Branch, Customer, Account Currency, Account, Amount, Percentage of Proceeds, and Amount Tag. The first row is selected, and a new row has been added below it. The window has 'Ok' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom right.

NOTE: This process of splitting the settlements for a contract is allowed on the principal, Interest (Anticipated Interest for new contracts), and charges.

42. On the **Split Settlement** screen, specify the details as required.

For information on fields, refer to the below table:

Table 3.38: Split Settlement - Field Description

Field	Description
Contract Reference	The selected contract reference number is displayed.
Basis Amount	The Basis Amount details is displayed.
Sequence Number	The Sequence number details is displayed.
Branch	The Branch details is displayed. Click the search icon and select the branch as required.
Customer	The Customer number is displayed. Click the search icon and select the customer as required.
Account Currency	Click the search icon and select the account currency from the list displayed.
Account	Click the search icon and select the account details from the list displayed.
Amount	Specify the amount details as required.
Percentage of Proceeds	This is a read only field, system displays the percentage of proceeds after save.
Amount Tag	System displays the amount tag details as required.

43. Choose the Account Currency, Account, and other necessary details, to create a split.

- For every Settlement contract the system allows a maximum of twelve splits.
- In case of auto-liquidation, the user must unlock the contract and register the split, upfront, that is prior to auto-liquidation. The updating provision, split settlement for the interest portion, is only available after saving and first approval. For each split amount, SGEN is produced. In field 72 of MT202 and MT202COV, the system will suffix the reference number with a hyphen followed by a running sequence number for each SGEN.
- Only if split settlement details are available, system will process the transaction accordingly, else the payment/settlement is treated as a single payment transaction
- If the user are splitting the contract during the rollover, the application considers the latest available split details and process the liquidation amount, if any. If split settlement details are not available, the transaction (partial (liquidation as part of rollover) is treated as normal/regular/non-split liquidation. The split is allowed in manual rollover as well.
- For a single component, the user can split the settlement amount and use the same settlement account more than once. There is no restriction on the repetition of split settlement amount for the same NOSTRO/settlement account.
- Cross currency split settlement is supported. The **Amount** field/column in the Split tab is, by default, in the contract currency (though not evident in the User Interface). The currency of the settlement account can be in a different currency. The converted amount has to be viewed in the accounting entries as part of Events tab only.
- Appropriate Amount tags, for each component like principal, interest and charges, are made available at the relevant event(s) for enriching the split settlement details.

FOR EXAMPLE:

Contract Booking									
Master Component		Basis amount							
MMINTCLS_LIQD		100							
Split Component		Split Amount							
MMINTCLS_LIQD_S01		60							
MMINTCLS_LIQD_S02		30							
MMINTCLS_LIQD_S03		10							
Test Case 1									
During LIQD Calculated Interest Liquidation = 110									
(i.e) actual calculated amount is greater than amount given on booking $110 - 100 = 10$									
Accounting entry posting									
MMINTCLS_LIQD_S01		60							
MMINTCLS_LIQD_S02		30							
MMINTCLS_LIQD_S03		$10 + 10 = 20$							
When the difference amount is greater it will be added to last account always									
Test Case 2									
During LIQD Calculated Interest Liquidation = 95									
(i.e) actual calculated amount is lesser than amount given on booking $95 - 100 = -5$									
Accounting entry posting									
MMINTCLS_LIQD_S01		60							
MMINTCLS_LIQD_S02		30							
MMINTCLS_LIQD_S03		$10 - 5 = 5$							
When the difference amount is lesser it will be subtracted to last account									
Test Case 3									
During LIQD Calculated Interest Liquidation = 70									
(i.e) actual calculated amount is lesser than amount given on booking $70 - 100 = -30$									
Accounting entry posting									
MMINTCLS_LIQD_S01		60							
MMINTCLS_LIQD_S02		$30 - 20 = 10$							
MMINTCLS_LIQD_S03		$10 - 10 = 0$						Will not be posted in accounting entry	
When the difference amount is lesser it will be subtracted from last account in descending order									

44. On **Security Repo Contract Online** screen, click **Messages**.

STEP RESULT: **Treasury Message Details** screen is displayed

Figure 3.39: Treasury Message Details

45. On the **Treasury Message Details** Screen, specify the details as required.

The following details of Advices are displayed:

- The message type
- The Name and ID of the recipient of the message and
- The status of the message.

click **Messages** to view the list of advices applicable to a particular event in the lifecycle of the repo.

46. On the **Treasury Message Details** Screen, click **View**.

STEP RESULT: **Treasury Message** Screen is displayed.

Figure 3.40: Treasury Message

-
47. On the **Treasury Message** screen, specify the details as required.

To view the text of a message, highlight the message and click Message Details. Click 'Exit' or Cancel button to exit the screen.

View the following details:

- Reference number of the message/advice
- Document number generated for the message/advice
- Version number of the message/advice
- Receiver/sender of the message
- Type of the message
- Type of the SWIFT message
- Complete text of the message/advice
- Remarks, if any
- Reject reason, if any
- Message trailer

48. On **Security Repo Contract Online** screen, click **Settlement**.

The settlement account details of each deal is displayed in the Settlement Instructions screen. Click on the contract for which the user want to view the settlement details and it is displayed in the Settlement Instructions section. For each amount tag, the following settlement details are displayed:

- Settlement account
- Currency of the settlement account
- Settlement account branch
- Payable or Receivable
- Ordering Institution
- Ordering Customer
- Beneficiary Institution
- Ultimate Beneficiary
- The settlement details for the latest event of the deal is displayed.

STEP RESULT: **Settlement Details** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.41: Settlement Details

49. On the **Settlement Details** screen, specify the details as required.
The deal gets settled based on the details specified in the settlement screen.
NOTE: For more details on this screen, refer to Settlements User Manual, section Processing Settlements.
50. On **Security Repo Contract Online** screen, click **Charges**.
STEP RESULT: **Charge Details** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.42: Charge Details

51. On the **Charge Details** screen, specify the details as required.
NOTE: The ICCF rate, amount, currency and the user can specify waive charge parameter. The Processing Charges and Fees manual, details the procedure for maintaining charge rules.
52. On **Security Repo Contract Online** screen, click **Tax**.
STEP RESULT: **Tax Details** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.43: Tax Details

The screenshot shows a 'Tax Details' window with the following sections:

- Contract Reference ***: A text input field.
- Tax Scheme**: A dropdown menu.
- Waived**: A checkbox.
- Rule Details**: A section with a 'Go' button and a table with columns: Rule, Basis Component, Event, Type, Waived.
- Amount Details**: A section with a 'Go' button and a table with columns: Value Date, Transaction Date, Currency, Amount, Event Sequence Number.

At the bottom right, there are 'Ok' and 'Exit' buttons.

53. On the **Tax Details** screen, specify the details as required.

For information on fields, see the below table

Table 3.39: Tax Details - Field Description

Field	Description
Contract References	Displays the contract reference number
Tax Scheme	Displays the tax scheme associated to the product.
Waived	Specify if the tax must be waived
Rule Details	
Rule	Displays the tax rules
Basis Component	Defaults the basis component from the product.
Event	Displays the event associated to the tax.
Type	Displays the type of tax.
Waived	Specify if the tax must be waived
Amount Details	
Value Date	Value date of tax liquidated
Transaction date	Transaction date of the tax processing
Currency	Displays the tax currency
Amount	Displays the tax amount collected
Event Sequence Number	Displays the event sequence number

54. On **Security Repo Contract Online** screen, click **MIS**.

STEP RESULT: **MIS Details** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.44: MIS Details

55. On **MIS Details** screen, specify the details as required.

For information on fields, refer the MIS User Guide.

56. On the **MIS Details** screen, click **Refinance Rate**.

STEP RESULT: **Refinance Rate** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.45: Refinance Rate

57. On the **Refinance Rate** screen, specify the details as required.

58. On the **MIS Details** screen, click **Amendment Rate**.

STEP RESULT: **Amendment Rate** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.46: Amendment Rate

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Amendment Rate". Inside the window, there is a section titled "Amendment Rate" containing four input fields: "Contract Reference", "Rate Code", "Rate Type", and "Spread". The "Rate Type" field is a dropdown menu with "Fixed" selected. At the bottom right of the window, there are "OK" and "Exit" buttons.

59. On the **Amendment Rate** screen, specify the details as required.
For information on fields, see the below table

Table 3.40: Amendment Rate - Field Description

Field	Description
Rate Type	Select the Rate Type from the drop-down list. The Options are: • Fixed • Floating • Automatic • Floating Periodic

60. On the **MIS Details** screen, click **Change Log**.
STEP RESULT: **Change Log** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.47: Change Log

Contract Change Log

Contract Change Log

1 Of 1 Go

MIS Class	Transaction Date	Old MIS Code	New MIS
-----------	------------------	--------------	---------

Ok Exit

61. On the **Change Log** screen, specify the details as required.
 62. On the **MIS Details** screen, click **Balance Transfer Log**.
- STEP RESULT: **Balance Transfer Log** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.48: Balance Transfer Log

Balance Transfer Log

Contract Reference

Balance Transfer Log

1 Of 1 Go

Branch	Period Code	Financial Year	General Ledger Code	Transfer Indicator	MIS Class	Transaction Date
--------	-------------	----------------	---------------------	--------------------	-----------	------------------

Cancel

63. On the **Balance Transfer Log** screen, specify the details as required.
 64. On **Security Repo Contract Online** screen, click **Fields**.
- STEP RESULT: **Fields** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.49: Fields

Contract Reference Number

Fields

1 Of 1 Go

Field Name	Value	Mandatory	Value Description
------------	-------	-----------	-------------------

Ok Exit

65. On **Fields** screen, specify the details as required.
For information on fields, see the table below

Table 3.41: Fields - Field Description

Field	Description
Contract Reference Number	Displays contract reference number
Field Name	Defaults user defined field name mapped to the product
Value	Specify the UDF value
Mandatory	Defaults the mandatory flag from user defined maintenance screen
Value Description	Displays the user defined value description

66. On **Security Repo Contract Online** screen, click **Linked Deal Details**.
STEP RESULT: **Linked Deal Details** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.50: Linked Deal Details

Contract Reference

1 Of 1 Go

Deal Reference	Margin Reference Number

1 Of 1 Go

Version	Leg Reference Number	Buy/Sell

Message

Ok Exit

67. On **Linked Deal Details** screen, specify the details as required.

For information on fields, see the table below

Table 3.42: Linked Deal Details - Field Description

Field	Description
Contract Reference	Displays the contract reference number
Deal Reference	Displays all linked deal reference number for the repo contract. The options of Deal type are: • Buy deal • Sell deal • Block deal
Margin Reference Number	Displays all the margin reference number created for the repo contract on margin processing
Version	Once the user clicks the Deal reference, system displays the leg reference version number
Leg Reference Number	Once the user clicks the Deal reference, system displays the leg reference number
Buy/Sell	Displays the leg type

68. On **Linked Deal Details** screen, click **Messages**.

User can view the MT5X message generated for a repo/reverse repo deal.

STEP RESULT: **Treasury Messages Details** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.51: Treasury Messages Details

Treasury Message Details

View Enter Query

Reference Number *

Message View

1 Of 1

Media	Message Type	Receiver	Currency	Amount	Released	Status	Exception Code

Name

Address

View

Exit

69. On **Treasury Messages Details** screen, specify the details as required.
For information on fields, see the below table:

Table 3.43: Treasury Messages Details - Field Description

Field	Description
Reference Number	Displays contract reference number
Media	Displays the message media
Message Type	Displays the message type
Receiver	Displays Receiver ID.
Currency	Displays message currency
Amount	Displays the amount
Released	Displays the released status
Status	Displays current status of message.
Exception Code	Displays the exception code, if the message goes in exception
Exception Details	Displays the exception details.
Name	Displays the name of the receiver.
Address	Displays the receiver address.

70. On **Treasury Messages Details** screen, click **View**.
STEP RESULT: **Treasury Messages** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.52: Treasury Messages

71. On the **Treasury Messages** screen, specify the details as required.
For more information on fields, see the below table

Table 3.44: Treasury Messages - Field Description

Field	Description
Reference Number	Displays the contract reference number
DCN	Displays document reference number of a contract
Event Sequence Number or Version Number	Displays the event sequence number
Receiver or Sender	Displays Receiver or Sender ID.
Message Type	Displays the type of message.
SWIFT Message Type	Displays the Swift MT number of the message sent or received.
Sub Message Type	Displays the sub message type
SWIFT Sub Message Type	Displays the Swift sub message type.
Message	Displays the Message view
Remarks	Displays the remarks
Reject Remarks	Displays the reject remarks.
Message Trailers	Displays the message trailers.

72. On the **Securities Repo Contract Online** screen, click **Holiday Preference**.
STEP RESULT: **Holiday Preference** screen is displayed

Figure 3.53: Holiday Preference

73. On the **Holiday Preference** screen, specify the details as required.

For information on fields, see the below table

Table 3.45: Holiday Preference - Field Description

Field	Description
Contract Reference	The Contract Reference number from the main screen is displayed here.
Holiday Validations Not Applicable	Check this box to indicate that the holiday calendar validation must not be performed.
Local Holiday	Select this check box, if the local holiday validation of dates and schedule movement is required, which is defaulted from product and amendable.
Currency Holiday	Select this check box, if the currency holiday calendar validation of dates and schedule movement is required, which is defaulted from product and amendable.
Financial Center Holiday	Select this check box, if the financial center holiday calendar validation of dates and schedule movement is required, which is defaulted from product and amendable.
Move Across Months	Check this box to indicate that the final date must be derived next month if the date falls on holiday. Otherwise, final date becomes end of the month though actual date derived is on next month.
Date Movement	Select the holiday date movement when the date falls on holiday. The adjoining drop-down list displays the following values: • Forward • Backward

Field	Description
Currency	Specify the currency details for which the holiday validation for dates and schedules movement is required, which is defaulted from product and amendable.
Financial Center	Specify the financial center from the adjoining option list. The list displays all active financial centers maintained in the system. You can choose the appropriate one.

74. On the **Holiday Preferences** screen, click **Event Date Preference**

STEP RESULT: **Holiday Preferences** with **Event Date** tab details is displayed.

The screenshot shows the 'Holiday Preferences' window with the 'Event Date Preference' tab active. At the top, there is a 'Contract Reference' field and a checkbox for 'Holiday Validations Not Applicable'. Below this, the 'Contract Preferences' section shows 'Event Date Preference' as the selected tab. The main area is titled 'Holiday Check Required' and contains a table with the following columns: Leg Type, Event Date Type, Description, Local Holiday, Currency Holiday, Financial Center, Event Date Type, Move Across Months, and Date Movement. The first row shows 'In Leg' as the Leg Type, with 'Not Applicable' in the Date Movement column. Below this table, there are two more sections: 'Currency' and 'Financial Center', each with a table for selecting specific details. The 'Currency' table has one row with a search icon. The 'Financial Center' table also has one row with a search icon. At the bottom right, there are 'Ok' and 'Cancel' buttons.

75. On the **Event Date Preference** tab, specify the details as required.

The following are the field descriptions:

Table 3.46: Field Description

Field	Description
Holiday Check Required	
Leg Type	Select the leg type for the holiday preferences from the adjoining drop-down list. The list displays the following values: • In Leg
Event Date Type Description	Specify the description of event date type for which the holiday calendar validations must be performed. The adjoining option list displays all valid event description maintained in the system. You can choose the appropriate one.
Local Holiday	Select this check box if the local holiday validation of the dates and schedule movement has to be executed.
Currency Holiday	Select this check box, to execute the currency holiday calendar validation of the dates and movement of schedules.
Financial Center	Select this check box, to execute the financial center holiday calendar validation of the dates and movement of schedules.
Event Date Type	The event date type details is displayed in this field.
Move Across Months	Check this box to indicate that the final date must be derived next month if the date falls on holiday. Otherwise, final date becomes end of the month though actual date derived is on next month.
Date Movement	Select the holiday date movement when the date falls on holiday. The adjoining drop-down list displays the following values: • Not Applicable • Forward • Backward
Currency	Specify the currency from the adjoining option list. The list displays all valid currencies maintained in the system. You can choose the appropriate one. This field is mandatory if event date level currency holiday validation is required.
Financial Center	Specify the financial center from the adjoining option list. The list displays all active financial centers maintained in the system. You can choose the appropriate one. This field is mandatory if event date level financial center holiday validation is required.
NOTE: Based on the requirement you can choose more than one holiday check at the same time.	

The Value Date, Maturity Date, Rate Revision Schedule Date, Rate Fixing Date and Interest Schedule date fields will be validated for Local, Currency and Financial Center holidays while Repo deal booking and the system displays an appropriate override message.

When any one or all of Rate Revision Schedule Date, Rate fixing date and Interest Schedule date falls on a holiday, then the date will be moved according to the date movement selected in 'Event Preference' tab, either Forward or Backward to a Business day.

When any one or all of Rate Revision Schedule Date, Rate fixing date and Interest Schedule date falls on a holiday and the date movement is selected as 'Not Applicable' in 'Event Preference' tab, an error message will be displayed and the date movement needs to be changed to 'Forward' or 'Backward'.

76. On the **Securities Repo Contract Online** screen, click **Margin Details**.

STEP RESULT: **Margin Details** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.54: Margin Transaction Query

77. On the **Margin Transaction Query** screen, Specify the details as required.

STEP RESULT: For information on fields, see the below table

Table 3.47: Margin Transaction Query - Field Description

Field	Description
Contract Reference Number	Display the Repo contract reference number
From Date	Select the date as required.
To Date	Select the date as required.
Transaction Date	This field is defaulted from the application date, displaying the margin event transaction date
Event Code	Displays the Margin Event code
Event Description	Displays margin event description
Transaction Currency	Displays the transaction currency.
Transaction Amount	Displays the transaction amount
Margin Account	Defaulted from the margin account maintained for the Repo/Reverse Repo deal.

Field	Description
Portfolio	Displays portfolio Id where the margin is processed
Security Id	Display the security ID used in the margin call
SK Location	Displays the Portfolio SK location.
SK Account	Displays the Portfolio SK account
Quantity	User Input Security Quantity
Total Amount	Total amount of security equivalent
Buy Deal Reference	Displays the Buy deal reference created for the margin call
Sell Deal Reference	Displays the sell deal reference created for the margin call

3.6 Repo Details

- On the **Securities Repo Contract Online** screen, click **Repo**
STEP RESULT: **Repo Block** screen is displayed

Figure 3.55: Repo Block

- On the **Repo Block** Screen, specify the details as required.
For field descriptions, see the below table:

Table 3.48: Repo Block - Field Description

Field	Description
Portfolio ID	This field is mandatory Click the search icon to view the list and select the Bank Portfolio Id from the list displayed.
Security Id	This field is mandatory Click the search icon to view the list and Specify the security ID from the list displayed.

Field	Description
SK Location	This field is mandatory Click the search icon to view the list and Select the SK location of Portfolio Id.
SK Account	This field is mandatory Click the search icon to view the list and Select the SK Account of Portfolio Id.
Security Form	This field is mandatory Select the value from the list as required.
Settlement SKL	The system defaults the place of settlement. However you can specify the settlement safe keeping location from the adjoining option list.
Price Quotation	Select the Price Quotation details from the drop-down list. The available options are: • Price • Percentage Price • Premium • Percentage Premium • Yield to Maturity
Quantity	This field is mandatory Specify the details as required.
Units/Currency	Select the Units/Currency value from the displayed list of values.
Input Price	This field is mandatory. Specify the Input Price details.
Total Amount	The system displays the Total Amount of security equivalent.
Series	Select the Series details from the displayed list of values.
Block Deal Reference	This is a system generated deal reference for the sub-deals, created by way of a block deal product.
Collateral Portfolio ID	Collateral Portfolio ID to move the securities from trading portfolio. This field is mandatory, if securities pledged option at the product level is Move to Collateral Portfolio.
Collateral SK Location	Select the Id from the list displayed.
Collateral SK Account	Select the Id from the list displayed.
Buy Deal Reference	Auto generated Buy Deal Reference on repo liquidation is displayed.
Sell Deal Reference	Auto generated Sell Deal Reference on repo book is displayed.

3.6.1 Specify Details of Parties Involved in Repo Block

This topic describes the systematic instruction to specify details of parties involved in Repo Block

CONTEXT:

The Parties screen can be used to record details related to all the parties involved in the Repo block.

PREREQUISITE:

Specify **User ID** and **Password**, and login to Homescreeen.

From Homescreeen, login to **Securities Repo Contract Online** screen.

PREREQUISITE: From

1. On **Securities Block or Release Block Input** screen, click **Parties** button in **Repo** subscreen.

STEP RESULT: **Party Details** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.56: Party Details

2. On **Party Details** screen, specify the following details:

Field	Field Description
Leg Reference Number	The system displays the leg reference number
Description	The system displays the description for the leg reference number
Counterparty	The system displays the counterparty
SK Location	The system displays the SK location
Portfolio ID	The system displays the Portfolio ID
Settlement SKL	The system displays the place of settlement
Security ID	The system displays the Security ID
Messages	The system displays the messages
Advice Code	The system displays the advice code
Advice Description	The system displays the description for the advice
Party ID	The system displays the party ID
Description	The system displays the description of the party
Address 1 – 6	Specify the address lines 1 to 6 for the selected Party ID.
Additional Information 1 – 3	Specify additional information, if any.
Party Details	
Party Type	Specify the party type. The adjoining option list displays the party types maintained in the system. You can choose the appropriate one.
Description	The system displays the description of the party type

Field	Field Description
Party ID	Specify the party ID from the adjoining option list. The list will display all valid party IDs maintained in the system. You can choose the appropriate one.
Counterparty Account	Specify the counterparty account
Address 1-4	Specify the address lines 1 to 4 for the selected Party ID.

Settlement Parties information default happens for the multiple portfolio maintained during creation. On Liquidation of SR Repo contract message, MT541/540 gets generated based on whether the flag Delivery vs Payment is enabled or toggled off to the linked Block deal. During booking of a SR Repo Deal, the parties default happens for the combination of counterparty, settlement SKL and Market code.

The Message MT54x gets generated for the BOOK event for the Linked Block Deal. The message generates the SETPRTY details for party type REAG, BUYR and PSET value. You can check the message in linked block deal screen under BOOK event.

On SR Repo Maturity, the Linked Block deal also gets released or liquidated. RBLK event gets triggered on release of security block generating the MT54x message. The message displays the set party block for party type DEAG, SELL and PSET values.

The system performs the following validations:

- The system validates when the existing address line to address line 4 is modified.
- Validate on booking of Repo contract message MT542/543 gets generated based on the flag Delivery vs Payment flag is enabled or toggled off to the linked block deal.

3.7 Repo Process

On Booking a Repo deal, Securities pledged will either be blocked in Bank portfolio or moved to a Collateral portfolio to track the securities. This is done based on Securities Pledged option given at Repo Product Preference.

3.7.1 Securities Pledged preference - Move to Collateral portfolio

- On Booking a Repo deal, the details of the pledged securities, captured in Repo Sub System is moved from Bank portfolio to Collateral portfolio and the system auto-generates the Bank Buy Bank Sell deal (Internal deal product mapped at Repo Product is used for deal booking).
- User can view the Bank Buy Deal details using the linked deal details subsystem. Once the user clicks, the deal reference, the user can view the MT5x messages from repo contract online screen.
- Repo reference number is captured in the SE deal.
- The system validates if the pledged security quantity is not available in the Bank's portfolio.
- The System continues to accrue the coupon in the collateral portfolio for the pledged securities. After the coupon schedule date, bank claims the coupon from the repo counterparty and process a manual corporate action to post backdated accounting entries. The user can view the message from Manual corporate action screen.
- Coupon Collection event generates the MT210 message to receive a coupon from repo counterparty.
- Once the user authorizes the Repo deal, the system generates GMRA (Global Master Repurchase Agreement), a paper-based confirmation or MT320 Contract confirmation message.

3.7.1.1 Repo Liquidation/Reversal

- Total quantity available in the collateral portfolio as part of repo deal (Initial pledged collateral and securities paid or received as part of margin call) is netted and moved back to bank portfolio by a bank sell deal. The same is executed on EOD for the auto liquidated deal.
- Cash margin paid and received are netted and settled on repo liquidation by initiating a margin call.
- User can view the Bank Sell Deal details using the linked deal details subsystem. Once the user clicks, the deal reference, the user can view the MT5x messages from repo contract online screen.

3.7.2 Securities Pledged preference - Block Securities

- On Booking a Repo deal, the details of the pledged securities, captured in Repo Sub System is blocked from the bank portfolio and the system auto-generates the Block Deal (product mapped at Repo for block booking).
- For Block type Repo, the repo counterparty defaults in a block deal.
- The system continues to accrue the coupon in bank portfolio for the pledged securities. After the coupon schedule date, the bank claims the coupon from the repo counterparty and process a manual corporate action to post back - dated accounting entries. The user can view the message from Manual Corporate action screen.
- User can view the block deal details using the linked deal details subsystem. Once the user clicks, the deal reference, the user can view the MT5x messages from online repo screen.
- System validates if the pledged security quantity is not available in the bank's portfolio.

3.7.2.1 Repo Liquidation/Reversal

- During Repo liquidation/pre closure/ cancellation, all the securities pledged as part of repo and margin call are released fully from the block. Cash margin paid and received are netted and settled on repo liquidation by initiating a margin call.
- User can view the block release details using the linked deal details subsystem. Once the user clicks, the deal reference, the user can view the MT5x messages from online repo screen.

3.7.3 Repo Messaging

Table 3.49: Repo Messaging Details

Action	DVP (Yes)	DVP (No)
Repo Booking	MT 543 and suppress MT 210	MT542/MT210
Repo Liquidation/Cancel	MT 541 and suppress MT 202	MT540/MT202

3.7.4 Processing Repos on Future Dated Holdings

The system allows you to book repos for a future date. For such contracts, the status is updated as 'Yet to be Uninitiated' and an MT54x message is generated as part of BOOK event for the Block deal.

The processing of the repo uninitiated contracts to active status happens during BOD batch processing by the batch 'SRAUTDLY'. When the system reaches the value date, on BOD, the contract status is moved to 'Active', if there is sufficient holdings available for the attached portfolio.

If the holdings for the attached portfolio during batch processing is insufficient, the contract remains in the 'Yet to be Initiated' status.

You can manually initiate these repo deals by running the Intraday batch 'SRBAINIT' in the **Treasury Intra Day Batch Start** screen. The contract status will be moved to 'Active' status, if there is sufficient holdings available for the attached portfolio. Else the contract will be in 'Yet to be Initiated' status itself.

The system triggers the INIT event as part of contract initiation for repo contract.

3.8 Reverse Repo Block

1. On the **Securities Repo Contract Online** screen, click **Reverse Repo**
STEP RESULT: **Reverse Repo Maintenance Block** screen is displayed

Figure 3.57: Reverse Repo Maintenance

Reverse Repo Maintenance

Contract Reference

Reverse Repo Details

1 Of 1

☐	Portfolio Id *	Portfolio Type	SK Location *	SK Account *	Security Code *	Settlement SKL	Price Quotation *	Quantity *	Input Pr

Parties

NOTE: All fields with an asterisk (*) are mandatory.

2. On the **Reverse Repo Maintenance** Screen, specify the details as required.
For field descriptions, see the below table:

Table 3.50: Reverse Repo Maintenance - Field Description

Field	Description
Portfolio ID	Select the Collateral Portfolio ID from the displayed list of values to receive the securities from counterparty.
Portfolio Type	Select the type of the portfolio form the drop-down list.
SK Location	Select the SK location from the list displayed.
SK Account	Select the SK Account from the list displayed.
Security Code	Select the Security Code from the list displayed.
Settlement SKL	The system defaults the place of settlement. However you can specify the settlement safe keeping location from the adjoining option list.
Price Quotation	Select the Price Quotation details from the drop-down list. The available options are: • Price • Percentage Price • Premium • Percentage Premium • Yield to Maturity
Quantity	Specify the details as required.
Input Price	Specify the input details as required.
Total Amount	The system displays the Total Amount of Security Equivalent.
Buy Deal Reference	Auto generated Buy Deal Reference on repo book is displayed.
Sell Deal Reference	Auto generated Sell Deal Reference on repo liquidation is displayed.

For more details on **Parties** button, refer to Repo block section in this User Manual.

3.8.1 Reverse Repo Process

- On Booking a Reverse Repo deal, the received securities details captured in Reverse Repo Sub System are moved from counterparty to banks' collateral portfolio. At save of Reverse Repo contract, system auto - generates an SE deal with Bank Buy Customer Sell combination (Bank Buy Customer Sell BBCS deal product mapped at reverser repo product is used for deal booking).
- User can view the Bank Buy Deal details using the linked deal details subsystem. Once the user clicks, the deal reference, the user can view the MT5x messages from repo contract online screen.
- System will accrue the coupon in collateral portfolio for the securities received as part of reverse repo. On Coupon schedule date Bank will receive coupon in collateral portfolio from custodian and the same is transferred back to reverse repo counterparty.
- Coupon transfer will generate MT202 message.

- The User can view the message from Manual corporate action screen.

Settlement Parties information default happens for the multiple portfolio maintained during creation. During creation of SR Reverse Repo deal, settlement parties default happens for the combination of counterparty, market code and settlement SKL from 'Settlement Parties Maintenance' screen.

The system defaults the party type DEAG, REAG, BUYR, SELL and PSET in the 'Parties' sub-screen. SE Buy Deal is linked to the SR Reverse Repo contract post authorization. The Linked SE Buy deal has the settlement parties defaulted in the 'Parties' sub-screen. MT54x message is generated for the BOOK event.

On maturity of an SR Reverse Repo contract, a Bank Sell SE deal gets generated in the Reverse Repo sub-screen. The Bank Sell deal has the party details of REAG, BUYR and PSET. MT54x message is generated to the BOOK event of Bank Sell deal.

On liquidation of an SR Reverse Repo contract, the message type MT542/543 is generated when flag Receive vs Payment flag is toggled on or off to the linked SE Deal.

During reversal of an SR Reverse repo contract, a new SE bank sell deal is generated. The Bank Sell deal has the party details of REAG, BUYR and PSET values. MT54x message is generated to the BOOK event.

The system internally identifies the message based on the Security deal. Each Party has the information of DEAG, SELL and PSET or REAG, BUYR, PSET.

For the message SEC_SETTLEMENT maintained in 'Security Deal Product Definition screen 'Securities Deal Product Definition' under BOOK event, Advices, appropriate message type are derived by the system

Messages can be viewed in Securities Deal Input screen, in the BOOK event, after authorization of the deal.

During booking of SR Reverse Repo contract, the system validates that the message type MT540 or 541 is generated when flag Receive vs Payment flag is toggled on or off to the linked SE Deal.

Reverse Repo Liquidation/Reversal

- Total quantity available in the collateral portfolio as part of reverse repo deal (Initial received collateral and securities paid or received as part of margin call) is netted and moved back to counterparty by a bank sell customer buy deal. The same is executed on EOD for the auto liquidated deal.
- Cash margin paid and received are netted and settled on repo liquidation by initiating a margin call.
- User can view the Bank Sell Deal details using the linked deal details subsystem. Once the user clicks, the deal reference, the user can view the MT5x messages from repo contract online screen.

Table 3.51: Reverse Repo Messaging

Action	RVP (Yes)	RVP (No)
Reverse Repo Booking	MT 541 and Suppress MT 202	MT540/MT202
Reverse Repo Liquidation/Cancel	MT 543 and Suppress MT 210	MT542/MT210

3.9 Authorize a Contract

The user must save a contract after entering all the required details in the system. Click **Save** icon on the Toolbar or choose 'Save' from the Actions menu to save an account. The system updates this as an unauthorized contract. To authorize an account, click Authorize on the Application toolbar.

NOTE: The user cannot authorize a contract from the Contract Input' screen in the following cases:

The contract has multilevel of authorization pending; the same is done using the **Multilevel Authorization Detailed** screen.

The level of authorization is greater than or equal to **N**.

The 'Nth' or the final level of the user's authorization limit is less than the difference between amount financed and some of the limits of all the users involved in authorizing a transaction; this case holds good when the '**Cumulative**' field is checked in the '**Product Transaction Limits Maintenance**' screen. The transaction amount is greater than the authorizer's authorization limit if the '**Cumulative**' field is unchecked in the '**Product Transaction Limits Maintenance**' screen

3.9.1 Multilevel Authorization of a Contract

High-value contracts may require multilevel of authorization. The levels of authorizations are defined in the '**Product Transaction Limits**' screen. The user can use the '**Multilevel Authorization Detailed**' screen for authoring a contract n-1 times. However, final authorization can take place only on the contract screen.

For more details, refer the Procedures User Manual, section Multilevel Authorization of Contract.

3.10 Summary Details of Repo Contract

This topic describes about the systematic instruction to process details of Repo Contract.

1. On Homescreen, specify **SRSTRONL** in the text box, and click next arrow.

STEP RESULT: **Securities Repo Contract Summary** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.58: Securities Repo Contract Summary

Table 3.52: Securities Repo Contract Summary - Field Description

Field	Description
Recommended Field	Contract Reference Number On screen launch, the application default with the Branch code followed by % in the Contract Reference Number field. Alternatively, you can select the reference number from the option list. The list displays all valid reference numbers maintained in the system.
Optional Fields	Select any one or all of the parameters from the Optional Field in the summary screen and click the Search button. The records meeting the selected criteria are displayed in the summary screen.

2. Click **Search** to view all the pending functions. However, the user can to filter your search based on any of the following criteria:

Recommended Fields

- Contract Reference Number

Optional Fields

- Authorization Status
- User Reference
- Customer
- Booking Date
- Related reference
- Status
- Product
- Currency
- Maturity date
- Account Branch

When the user click 'Search' button the records matching the specified search criteria are displayed. For each record fetched by the system based on your query criteria, the following details are displayed:

- Authorization Status
- Record Status
- Reference Number
- User Reference
- Product
- Customer
- Currency
- Amount
- Booking Date
- Value Date
- Maturity Date
- Related Reference

-
- Account Branch
 - Module
 - Status
 - Payment Method
 - Rate Code
 - Rate
 - Spread
 - Profit Amount
 - Product Description
 - Outstanding Principal
 - Related Reference
 - Checker Id
 - Maker Id

3.11 Margin Product for a REPO

CONTEXT:

The user can maintain Margin Products in Oracle Banking Treasury Management. The Information about a margin product is captured through the Margin Product Maintenance screen.

1. On Homepage, type **MGDCPROD** in the text box, and then click next arrow.

STEP RESULT: The **Margin Product Maintenance** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.59: Margin Product Maintenance

2. On **Margin Product Maintenance** screen, click **New**.
3. On **Margin Product Maintenance** screen, specify the following Instrument Details, and then click **Enter Query**.

For more information on the fields, see the below table

For further information on the generic attributes that the user can define for a product, please refer the following Oracle Banking Treasury Management User Manuals under Modularity:

- Product Definition
- Charges

- User Defined Fields

Table 3.53: Margin Product Definition - Field Description

Field	Description
Product Code and Product Description	The user can identify a product that is maintained with a unique Product Code, and a brief description. In the Product Code field, the user must assign the product a unique code (which is unique across all the modules of Oracle Banking Treasury Management). This code helps in identifying the product. The user can briefly describe a product that the user create in the Description field.
Product Module	The services that the user offer in a module is specific to the module. For example, a portfolio maintenance scheme is specific to the ETD (Portfolio) module. The user can view the module in which the user are creating a product in the Product Module field.
Product Type	The first attribute that the user define for a portfolio product is its type. The user can broadly classify portfolio products into two types: • Broker Margin Product (BR) – the definition and maintenance of broker margin products help the user manage the broker's margin requirement. • Customer Margin Product (PF) – the definition and maintenance of Customer portfolio products help the user manage the margin requirement of the bank that the customer is to satisfy. Under each type the user can create multiple portfolio products.
Product Slogan	The user can enter a slogan for the product that the user are creating. In the Slogan field enter a slogan that suitably announces the product to your customers. If the user is creating your own portfolio, the user can identify it with an appropriate slogan for your bank's internal reference purposes.
Product Group	Grouping products according to the common features they share, helps the user to organize information relating to the services provided. This helps the user retrieve information easily. The user can invoke a list of all the product groups that the user has maintained in your bank. Choose the product group to which the product the user are creating belongs.
Product Start Date and End Date	When the user create a product, the user must also specify a date from which it can be offered. The user may also specify the date up to which the user would like to offer the product. Enter these dates in the Start Date and End Date fields. NOTE: The user cannot offer a product beyond the specified end date. If the user do not specify an end date for a product, the user can offer it for an indefinite period.

Field	Description
Remarks	If the user wants to enter any remarks regarding the product, do so in the Remarks field.

4. On **Margin Product Main** screen, click **Preference**.

STEP RESULT: The **Margin Product Preference** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.60: Margin Product Preference

In Oracle Banking Treasury Management, all operations on a deal (input, amendment, modification, etc.) have to be authorized by a user other than the one who entered the deal details. These operations have to be carried out before the end-of-day activities have begun. Authorization is a way of checking the entries made by a user.

As part of specifying the preferences for a deal product, the user can indicate that details of certain fields must be reentered when a deal is invoked for authorization, as a cross-checking mechanism. The complete details of the deal is displayed only after the values to these fields are entered. The fields for which the values have to be given are called the rekey fields.

If no rekey fields have been defined, the details of the deal involving the product is displayed immediately when the authorizer calls the deal for authorization. The rekey option also serves as a means of ensuring the accuracy of inputs.

5. Specify the following details in the **Margin Product Preference** screen.
For more information on the fields, see the below table.

Table 3.54: Margin Product Preference - Field Description

Field	Description
Categories List	Indicate whether the user wants to create a list of allowed customers or disallowed customers by choosing one of the following options: • Allowed • Disallowed
Currency Restrictions	Indicate whether the user wants to create a list of allowed currencies or disallowed currencies by selecting one of the following options: • Allowed • Disallowed

3.12 Securities Margin Process

CONTEXT:

The user can trigger the margin processing for the Repo or Reverse Repo contract using this screen and also from the external system if Collateral revaluation at Repo product is Margin Settlement.

Both Cash Margin and Securities are transacted from the same screen by selecting appropriate action on the screen.

1. On Homescreen, specify **SRDMRONL** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

STEP RESULT: **Securities Repo Margin Processing** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.61: Securities Repo Margin Processing

2. On the **Securities Repo Margin Processing** screen, specify the details as required.
For information on fields, see the below table:

Table 3.55: Securities Repo Margin Processing - Field Description

Field	Description
Contract Reference No	This is a Mandatory Field Select the contract reference number details as required, from the list of values provided.
Margin Ref No	System displays the generated reference number.
Transaction Date	This is a Mandatory Field The date is defaulted to the application date. Margin transaction date cannot be less than value date or greater than maturity date of the repo or reverse repo deal.
Remarks	Specify the details as required.
Margin Settlement	Specify the details as required.
Margin Type	This is a Mandatory Field Select the value based on the requirement. The options are: • Cash • Securities
Cash Margin	This is a Mandatory Field Select the value based on the requirement. The options are: • Pay • Receive
Account Branch	Defaulted from the margin account branch maintained for the Repo/Reverse Repo deal.
Margin Account	Defaulted from the margin account maintained for the Repo/Reverse Repo deal.
Account Currency	Defaulted from the margin account currency maintained for the Repo/Reverse Repo deal.
Amount	Specify the details as required.
Margin	This is a Mandatory field Select the option from the drop-down box. The options are: • Pay • Receive
Portfolio ID	This is a Mandatory field Select the option from the list of values displayed as required.
Security ID	This is a Mandatory field Select the option from the list of values displayed as required.
SK Location	This is a Mandatory field Select the option from the list of values displayed as required.
SK Account	This is a Mandatory field Select the option from the list of values displayed as required.

Field	Description
Collateral Portfolio ID	This is a Mandatory field Select the option from the list of values displayed as required.
SK Location	This is a Mandatory field Select the option from the list of values displayed as required.
SK Account	This is a Mandatory field Select the option from the list of values displayed as required.
Security Form	Select the option from the list of values displayed as required.
Quantity	Specify the details as required.
Units/ Currency	Specify the details as required.
Input Price	Specify the details as required.
Contract Equivalent Book Value	Specify the details as required.
Total Amount	Specify the details as required.
Deal Reference	Buy deal/Sell deal/Block deal for Repo and Reverse Repo
Deal Type	Block Deal, Buy deal and sell deal

3. On the **Securities Repo Margin Process** screen, click **Events**.

STEP RESULT: **Treasury Events** Screen is displayed.

Figure 3.62: Treasury Events

4. On the **Treasury Events** screen, specify the details as required.
For information on fields, see the below table

Table 3.56: Treasury Events - Field Description

Field	Description
Reference Number	Displays the margin reference number

Field	Description
Event Number	Displays margin event number
Event Code	Displays margin event code
Description	Displays the margin event description
Event Date	Displays the Margin event date
Authorization Status	Displays the event authorization status
Maker Id	Displays the event maker ID
Checker Id	Displays the Checker ID

5. On **Treasury Events** screen, click **Accounting Entries**
STEP RESULT: **Treasury Accounting Entries** is displayed.

Figure 3.63: Treasury Accounting Entries

6. On the **Treasury Accounting Entries** screen, Click **Accounting Entries** tab to view margin event accounting entries.
7. On **Treasury Events** screen, click **Overrides**
STEP RESULT: **Overrides** is displayed.

Figure 3.64: Treasury Accounting Entries - Overrides

8. On **Overrides** tab screen, specify the details as required.
9. On **Treasury Events** screen, click **Messages**.

STEP RESULT: **Treasury Message** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.65: Treasury Message

10. On **Treasury Message** screen, Click **Message** to view Margin messages for a particular event.
For information on fields, see the below table
 11. On the **Treasury Message** screen, click **Message Details**
- STEP RESULT: **Treasury Message** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.66: Treasury Message

12. On the **Treasury Message** screen, view the messages in detail as required.
13. On **Security Repo Margin Process** screen, click **Settlement**.

STEP RESULT: **Settlement Details** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.67: Settlement Details

14. On the **Settlement Details** screen, Click Settlement Details to view the margin processing settlement details
15. On the **Securities Repo Margin Process** screen, click **Fields**.
For more information on fields, see the below table

Table 3.57: Securities Repo Margin Process - Fields - Field Descriptions

Field	Description
Contract Reference Number	Display the margin reference number

Field	Description
Field Name	Displays the user defined field name
Value	Displays the user defined field value
Mandatory	Defaults mandatory details from UDF maintenance screen
Value Description	Displays the value description

3.13 Securities Repo Margin Processing Summary

1. On Homescreen, specify **SRSMRONL** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

STEP RESULT: **Securities Repo Margin Processing Summary** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.68: Securities Repo Margin Processing Summary

2. On the **Securities Repo Margin Processing Summary** screen, specify the details as required.

The following fields are displayed:

- Margin Reference number
- Contract reference number
- Transaction Date
- Margin type
- Margin
- Margin account
- Account currency
- Amount
- Portfolio ID
- SK location
- SK account
- Collateral Portfolio ID
- SK Location
- SK account

- Security
- Quantity
- Deal reference
- Deal type
- Authorization status

3.14 Margin Message Details

- During the Repo or Reverse Repo life cycle, as part of collateral revaluation, either margin call is initiated to adjust Securities/cash or repricing of repo or reverse repo by adjusting the nominal amount. This is done based on collateral revaluation preference at the repo product level.
- If Collateral revaluation is by Margin settlement, The user can send a margin call from an external system or initiated manually from the screen Repo Reverse Repo Margin Processing (SRDMRONL) for a repo or a reverse repo contract.
- The available options for Margin type are:
 - Securities
 - Cash
- The available options for the Margin call are:
 - Pay
 - Receive
- Based on the above mentioned Margin call and type details, the following table explains the margin processing details:

Table 3.58: Margin processing Details

Margin Type	Margin	Deal	Expected Processing
Cash	Pay	REPO / Reverse REPO	Cash margin pay is initiated to pay extra cash. Cash margin account, account branch, account currency and amount details are sent from external system. Cash margin account details will default from reverse repo deal, user can modify the same with proper SSI. SSI are maintained for 'MG' module code for cash margin settlement. The event CMPY is triggered in margin processing screen
Cash	Receive	REPO / Reverse REPO	Cash margin receive is initiated to receive cash in margin account. The event CMRV is triggered in margin processing screen on cash margin receive

Margin Type	Margin	Deal	Expected Processing
Securities	Pay	REPO	Securities Pledged - Move to Collateral portfolio Securities pay margin call is initiated to pay additional collateral to the repo counterparty. On securities pay additional collateral is moved from bank portfolio to collateral portfolio by booking a Bank Buy deal (auto-generated BBBS deal). The margin reference number is captured in the SE deal. The event SMPY is triggered in margin processing screen on securities pay.
			Securities Pledged - Block Securities Securities pay margin call is initiated to pay additional collateral to the repo counterparty. On securities pay, additional collateral is blocked in the bank's portfolio. If the securities pledged is already blocked, an amendment is created on the block deal to add the additional securities. If the securities pledged is new, then a new block is created on a margin call. Block deal reference and margin reference is captured in a block deal. The same should happen on EOD for the auto liquidated deal. The event SMPY is triggered in margin processing screen on securities pay.
Securities	Receive	REPO	Securities Pledged - Move to Collateral portfolio Securities receive margin call is initiated to receive pledged collateral from repo counterparty. On securities receive pledged collateral is moved back from collateral portfolio to bank portfolio by booking a bank sell deal (Auto-generated BBBS deal). The event SMRV is triggered in margin processing screen on securities receive.
			Securities Pledged - Block Securities Securities receive margin call is initiated to receive pledged collateral from repo counterparty. On securities receive block is released partially or fully, and the amendment is created on the block. If the block is fully released block deal will get liquidated. The event SMRV is triggered in margin processing screen on securities receive.

Margin Type	Margin	Deal	Expected Processing
Securities	Pay	Reverse Repo	Securities pay margin call is initiated to pay additional collateral to the repo counterparty. On securities pay pledged securities are moved from collateral portfolio to counterparty custodian by booking a Bank Sell deal (auto-generated BSCB deal). The event SMPY is triggered in margin processing screen.
Securities	Receive	Reverse Repo	Securities receive margin call is initiated to receive pledged collateral from reverse repo counterparty. On securities receive pledged collateral is moved from counterparty custodian to collateral portfolio by booking a bank buy deal (auto-generated BBCS deal). The event SMRV is triggered in margin processing screen.

Table 3.59: Margin Processing Message Details

Action	DVP/RVP (Yes)	DVP/RVP (No)
Security Pay	MT542	MT542
Security Receive	MT540	MT540
Cash Pay	MT202	MT202
Cash Receive	MT210	MT210

3.15 Margin Transaction Query

1. On Homescreen, specify **SRDMRTRQ** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

STEP RESULT: **Margin Transaction Query** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.69: Margin Transaction Query

Margin Transaction Query

Enter Query

Contract Reference Number

From Date * YYYY-MM-DD

To Date * YYYY-MM-DD

Search

Reset

1 Of 1

Transaction Date	Event Code	Event Description	Transaction Currency	Transaction Amount	Margin Account

Exit

- On the **Margin Transaction Query** screen, specify the details as required.
For information on fields, see the below table:

Table 3.60: Margin Transaction Query

Field	Description
Contract Reference Number	Select the reference number from List of Values displayed.
From Date	Specify the From Date for Transaction Query
To Date	Specify the To Date for Transaction Query
Transaction Date	Date is displayed from the system
Event	The event details is displayed.
Event Description	The event description of the selected event is displayed
Txn CCY	The CCY details of the event is displayed.
Txn Amount	The Margin amount is displayed.
Margin Account	Specify the Margin Processed Account
Portfolio	Specify the Portfolio for which the event is processed.
Security ID	Specify the details as required.
SK Location	Select the details as required.
SK Account	Select the details as required.
Quantity	Select the details as required.
Total Amount	Select the details as required.

Field	Description
Buy deal reference	Select the details as required.
Sell Reference No	Select the details as required.

3.16 Rate Fixing Process for Repo

This section provides the details on the different maintenance involved in the rate fixing process and the process in executing the rate fixing for an repo contract.

3.16.1 Treasury Branch Parameter Maintenance

Proceed with Previous Available Rate parameter that is considered during both rate revision and rate fixing process during EOD.

For the first interest period, rate fixing below the trade date is allowed from the manual rate fixing screen, interface, and the batch process.

If rate fixing event is not processed either manually from the Rate fixing screen or during BOD batch then during SR EOD batch processing system must check for effective date rate and if available, rate fixing is processed based on the flag set for Proceed with previous available rate.

At Treasury branch parameter maintenance screen (STDTRBRN), a preference check Proceed with previous available rate is introduced and is considered during both rate revision and rate fixing process during EOD. Default value of this field is checked.

In case when Proceed with previous available rate preference is enabled, during EOD processing system checks for rate availability for that particular effective date in the Floating rate table and if rates are not available for that

date, then Rate fixing and revision event is applied on instruments with the previous latest rate available in the system.

Whereas when Proceed with previous available rate check box is not enabled, during EOD, processing system skips the Rate fixing and revision event on respective instruments in case when the rate for that effective date is not available.

For every revision schedule, which applies a rate fixing during EOD processing, a new rate-fixing event RFIX triggers.

In case of a forward movement on fixing days from the revision effective date, rate fix happens after the revision effective date and interest catch up entries is posted during EOD processing.

3.16.2 Treasury Rate Fixing Maintenance

The Floating Rate is fixed for every period of the cash flow settlement of the floating rate leg. The rate fixing days can be defined and it may differ on a trade-to-trade basis. For more information, see the section: [3.16.7.1 Treasury Manual Rate Fixing Maintenance](#)

3.16.3 Treasury Interest Class Definition

Rate Fixing Days and Fixing Date Movement are available under Limits block in Treasury Interest Class Definition. Treasury Interest Class Definition supports RFR methods and computation preferences for securities repo module only.

3.16.4 Securities Repo Product Definition

The Rate Fixing Days and Fixing Date Movement defaults from the Interest Component. However the user can modify the default value. For more information, see the section: [3.3.1 Securities Repo Product attributes](#)

3.16.5 Securities Repo Contract Online

Users can set the values of fields Rate Fixing Days and Fixing Date Movement in the interest component. For more information, see the section: [3.5 Capture Details of Repo Contract](#)

3.16.6 Build Rate Fixing Schedules

On saving the SR transaction/contract, the system builds rate fixing schedules based on the rate revision dates, rate fixing days and fixing date movement. Derived Rate fixing date is viewed from the revision schedule details screen after saving the Instrument. If there are no revision schedules defined for a contract then rate fixing is not applicable.

The rate fixing schedule can be less than the trade date of the transaction for the first interest period.

For every revision schedule, which applies a rate fixing from an external system or in OBTR through online screen or EOD processing, the event rate fixing event RTFX is triggered and the rate fixing applied field is updated automatically to Y. The effective rate resolves after considering the spread and is displayed with other rate related details in the Revision date details screen of SRDTRONL.

Rate fixing is not applied on back dated contracts having past revision schedules. For future dated rate fixing date that is when the fixing date movement is forward rate revision event will not fire on schedule date. Once rate fixing is done on the future date (that is, same as business date) the rate revision event will trigger.

Table 3.61: Rate Fix Forward Example - 2 days forward

Rate fixing is applied 2 days after the revision schedules and adjustment entries are posted

Revision Schedule Date	Rate Fixing Date
12/11/2019	12/13/2019
12/18/2019	12/20/2019

Revision Schedule Date	Rate Fixing Date
12/25/2019	12/27/2019
1/1/2020	1/3/2020
1/10/2020	1/12/2020

Table 3.62: Rate Fix Backward Example - 2 days Backward

Rate fixing is applied 2 days before the revision schedules.

Revision Schedule Date	Fixing Date	
12/17/2019	12/13/2019	14th & 15th Weekend holiday
12/24/2019	12/20/2019	21st & 22nd Weekend holiday
12/31/2019	12/23/2019	28th 29th Weekend holiday
1/7/2020	1/3/2020	4th & 5th Weekend holiday
1/14/2020	1/10/2020	11th & 12th Weekend holiday

Table 3.63: Rate Fix Example

Rate fixing and Rate revision on same date.

Revision Schedule Date	Fixing Date
12/17/2019	12/17/2019
12/24/2019	12/24/2019
12/31/2019	12/31/2019
1/7/2020	1/7/2020
1/14/2020	1/14/2020

3.16.7 Treasury Manual Rate Fixing

- Treasury Manual Rate fixing screen **TRDMRTFX** will fetch deals for which rate fix is applicable based on the filter selected. Fixing date must be the primary search criteria to query deals, which are due on that day for rate fixing. Ensure the fixing date is less than or equal to the system date, this cannot be future dated.
- The system fetches the deals requiring rate-fixing from this screen based on the Branch Code, Module, Rate Fixing date, Rate code, Source System and currency filter conditions.
- Contracts with the rate fixing and status as Authorized or Unauthorized are not listed here upon date search or fetch.
- This screen also supports the initiation of rate-fixing procedure on selected contracts from OBTR. Rate fixing event is processed online or during EOD on fixing date, only if the effective date floating rates are available. System skips the rate-fixing events if rates are not available during the job processing.

- From this screen user have an option to process rate fixing for:
 - Specific Modules
 - Specific Rate Code
 - Specific Branch or
 - Multiple Branches
- User is given the option to select single, multiple or all records that are eligible for rate fixing.
- The final interest rate is derived, considering the Spread on the contract.
- Minimum and the Maximum rates are validated if the resolved rate exceeds these limits.
- If rate-fixing event is not processed manually from the Rate fixing screen or during BOD batch then, during EOD batch process system checks for latest effective date rate. If available, rate fixing is processed.
- Based on the **Proceed with previous available rate** maintenance at the Treasury Branch parameter Maintenance. If the flag **Proceed with previous available rate** is not selected, during the EOD batch, system skips the rate revision and fixing procedure if the effective date is not available.
- The rate-fixing event RTFX is triggered upon each successful rate-fixing contract online and during EOD.
- In margin screen, when the user saves the details, it will get saved in unauthorized status. Another user can verify the details and authorize the same.
- Once the rate-fixing event is processed, the system generates the standard MT 320 swift confirmations or advice applicable. On confirmation, MT320 will specify the rate and period applicable.
- Once the rate fixing is applied, the contracts are not listed on fetching from rate-fixing screen. User will receive a message that Rate fixing is successfully processed on the selected contracts.
- Rate fixing on back value dates is supported from this screen, if rates are available because of the time difference. An index published on the effective date in the US, or Europe market is available in the Asian region only on the next business day effective from the previous day. The system posts the backdated Interest Adjustments during EOD.
- In case of a forward movement on fixing days from the revision effective date, the rate is fixed after the effective date, and interest catch up entries are posted during the EOD processing.

3.16.7.1 Treasury Manual Rate Fixing Maintenance

This screen allows the user to fetch the contracts which require rate fixing and also apply the rate fix on the selected float rate type contracts having the fixing date as the primary search criteria to query deals.

1. On the homepage, type **TRDMRTFX** in the text box, and click the next arrow.
STEP RESULT: **Treasury Manual Rate Fixing** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.70: Treasury Manual Rate Fixing

Treasury Manual Rate Fixing

New Enter Query

Rate Fixing Reference Number * _____

Branch Code * _____

Rate Code _____

Rate Fixing Date * yyyy-MM-dd _____

Source System * _____

Module Code * _____

Currency _____

Contract Reference _____

Fetch

Deal Details

1 Of 1 Go

Contract Reference	Component	Rate Code	Currency	Rate	Spread

Maker Date Time Contract Status
Checker Date Time Auth Status

Exit

2. On the **Treasury Manual Rate Fixing** screen, specify the details as required.

NOTE: A scheduler job, TR_RTFX_UPLOAD is defined and scheduled to pick rate fixed records from the external system.

For information on fields, see the below table

Table 3.64: Treasury Manual Rate Fixing

Field	Description
Rate Fixing Reference Number	This is a Mandatory Field. The system generates the reference number for rate fixing.
Branch Code	This is a Mandatory Field. Specify the Branch code as per the requirement.
Rate Code	Specify the Rate code from the list of values displayed.
Rate Fixing Date	This is a Mandatory Field. Specify the Rate fixing date as per the requirement.
Source System	Specify the Source System as per the requirement.
Module Code	This is a Mandatory Field. Specify the Module code from the list of values displayed.
Currency	Specify the Currency details as required from the list of values displayed. NOTE: The rate fixed contracts having status Authorized or Unauthorized is not listed here.
Contract Reference	Specify the contract reference number from the list of values displayed.
Component	Displays the interest component
Rate Code	Displays the rate code for which rate fixing is done

Field	Description
Currency	Displays the rate code currency
Rate	Displays the floating rate
Spread	Defaults the rate code spread from contract
Customer Margin	Displays customer margin from product
Effective Rate	Displays the effective interest rate
Rate Fixing Date	Displays the rate fixing date
Rate Fixing Applied	Displays whether rate fixing is applied while querying for a contract Reference.
Effective Date	Displays the effective date

- The user has an option to process the rate fixing for the specific modules or specific rate code; all rate code; specific currency or all currency; specific branch or all branches.
- Rate fixing for the first interest period below the trade date of the transaction can be handled.
- Once all the details are provided and the user click on Fetch, the contracts pending for rate fixing are fetched based on the conditions mentioned in the deal details field.
- For the contracts once rate fixing is applied, the same contract is not fetch again.
- The Final Effective rate is derived from the Rate, Spread, and Customer Margin.
- The Rate fixing event is triggered on authorization of the record.
- The confirmation message is generated for the contract (if applicable).
- The Rate fixing on back dated dates is supported from this screen, if rates are available.
- In case of a forward movement, rate is fixed after the effective date and interest catch up entries are posted during EOD processing.
- On Batch Processing, the Rate fixing event is processed on fixing date, only if the effective date floating rates are available. If rates are not available during processing, rate fixing event is skipped.

3.16.7.2 Treasury Manual Rate Fixing Summary

You can view the rate fixing changes for a contract using the 'Treasury Manual Rate Fixing Summary' screen. You can invoke this screen by typing **TRSMRTFX** in the field at the top right corner of the Application tool bar and clicking on the adjoining arrow button.

Figure 3.71: Treasury Manual Rate Fixing Summary

You can query the records based on any or all of the following criteria:

- Auth Status
- Rate Fixing Reference Number
- Source System
- Branch Code
- Module Code
- Contract Status
- Rate Fixing Date
- Rate Code
- Currency
- Contract Reference

Click the 'Search' button. The system identifies all the records that satisfy the specified criteria and displays the following details along with the other fields for each one of them:

- Auth Status
- Contract Status
- Rate Fixing Reference Number
- Rate Fixing Date

- Source System
- Rate Code
- Branch Code
- Currency
- Module Code
- Contract Reference

3.16.7.3 Generic Interface Support

OBTR interfaces with other external systems to handle Incoming/Outgoing data using batch mechanism (Flat files). This process streamlines the exchange of data between OBTR and external systems.

User can define properties, formats and components associated with interface file in the Interface Definition screen (**GIDIFTDFP**). For uploading rate fixed contracts from the external system into OBTR select Interface type as Incoming, Interface code as **TRIMRTFX**.

3.16.7.4 Scheduler Job

Job name: **TR_RTFX_UPLOAD** is defined and scheduled to pick the rate fixed records from the external system.

3.16.7.5 Trigger Interface

User can trigger the process of generic Interface using the Interface trigger **GIDIFPRS** screen.

3.17 Amend Securities Repo Transactions

Once a SR contract is authorized, changes to this is done through the Securities Repo Value Dated Changes Input screen.

3.17.1 Value Dated Amendment

Any change to the terms of a SR deal, which affects its financial details and the accounting entries, is made through the Value Dated Changes function of Oracle Banking Treasury Management. Through this function, the user can make changes to authorized deals on any day before the Maturity Date of the deal. The changes to the terms of a deal notified through this function, take effect on a date referred to as the “Value Date”.

That is why the changes brought about by this function are called Value Dated Changes.

A Value Date could be:

- Today
- A date in the future
- A date in the past

Using the Value Dated Changes function, the user can make changes to the various components of a deal like the interest rate or amount. The user can also change the Maturity Date. In addition to changing the values in certain fields, the user can enter a value into a field, which was not used, when the Repo details was captured.

For example, the user may not have specified a fee at the time of deal input. Using the Value Dated Changes function, the user can specify the fee so that the fee entries are passed on the Value Date.

When the user make a value dated change, only the accrual entries is passed by the Value Dated Changes function. The Automatic Contract Update function passes all the other accounting entries. The Value Date is the date on

which the changes that are going to be defined will take effect. This is a date earlier than today, today, or a date in the future. If the value date is a date in the past, it must not be beyond the following dates for any component:

- Last payment date
- Last schedule date

Also, a value date in the future cannot be beyond the Maturity Date of the deal. If it has to be beyond the Maturity Date of the deal, the user first must postpone the Maturity Date of the deal so that the proposed future value date falls before the new maturity date. Only after this change is authorized which the user can fix a value date in the future for the deal.

Change the Maturity Date

Enter the new Maturity Date on the screen. When the user change the Maturity Date of a deal:

- If the user has advanced the Maturity Date, the schedules falling due after the new Maturity Date is redefined to the Maturity Date.
- If the user has postponed the Maturity Date, the schedules that have not liquidated and which fall due before the new maturity Date is redefined to the new Maturity Date.
- The user has to authorize the change in Maturity Date, before the user redefine the schedules as per your new requirements, through the Contract Schedules screen.
- When the user extend the Maturity Date of a deal, the time code of the credit line to which the deal is linked must be beyond the new Maturity Date. If not, the system will seek an override.
- The new Maturity Date applies to the deal from the Value Date of the deal.

Make Changes in Interest

If the user want to make value dated changes in the interest rate, the rate code, the spread or the interest amount the user has to invoke the Contract Interest, Charge and Fee screen of the ICCB module through the Value Dated Changes screen. The user can make value dated changes only to the following components in the Contract ICCB screen: Interest Rate

Enter the new interest rate. However, the user will not be able to:

Change the interest rate if the user has defined zero-interest for the deal

- Rate Code: If a floating type of interest is defined, enter the new rate code.
- Spread: Enter the new spread here.
- Interest Amount: Enter the new interest amount.
- Acquired Interest: If the deal initiated when it was input, the interest amount that has been accrued is entered here. The amount is taken into account by the system during the next liquidation cycle. The user can make changes to the acquired interest through this screen.
- Waiver: The attributes of an interest component are defined for a product is applied to a deal involving the product. If for some reason the user do not want to apply the interest component for the deal the user are processing; the user can do so by checking this field. The interest is calculated, but it is applied on the deal.

NOTE: For back valued changes in interest rate, the system will take corrective action. Accruals are redone till the last accrual date. Also, in case of a back valued change, the value date must not be beyond the last liquidation date.

3.18 Security Repo VAMI

This topic provides the instructions to capture the Security Repo Vami details.

1. On Homescreeen, specify **SRDXVMND** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

STEP RESULT: **Security Repo Vami** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.72: Security Repo Vami

2. On the **Security Repo VAMI** screen, specify the details as required.
For information on fields, see the below table:

Table 3.65: Security Repo VAMI - Field Description

Field	Description
Contract Reference	SR Contract Reference Number or Agreement Reference Number
Counterparty	The Counterparty details is displayed.
Customer Name	Customer name is displayed.
Currency	Contract currency details are displayed.
Latest Version Number	Contract version number is displayed.
Amendment Date	The date of amendment is displayed.
Start Date	The start date of contract is displayed.
Product	The product details is displayed.
Product Description	The default description is displayed.
Current Values	
Principal	The Principal details are displayed.
Rate	The rate is displayed.
Modification	
Maturity Date	The Maturity date of the contract is displayed.
Repricing	Repricing of purchased repo/reverse repo is specified.

Field	Description
Increase in Principal	Change in principal on repricing is given.
Decrease in Principal	Decrease in principal can be given if repricing is selected.
Local Currency Equivalent	Specify the local currency equivalent for the total paid amount. The local currency equivalent is calculated.

- If Collateral revaluation is by repricing, value dated amendment is initiated. The Value dated amendment is done from SRDXVMND Repo VAMI screen.
- If the Repricing flag is enabled, the user can increase or decrease the principal amount and change the repo rate for repricing.

WARNING: The Principal decrease is allowed for repricing only.

3. On the **Security Repo VAMI** screen, click **Brokerage**.

STEP RESULT: **Brokerage** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.73: Brokerage

The screenshot shows the 'Brokerage' window with the following fields and options:

- Contract Reference**: Text input field.
- Broker ***: Text input field.
- Broker Name**: Text input field.
- Rule**: Text input field.
- Payable**: Section header.
- Currency ***: Text input field.
- Amount**: Text input field.
- Liquidation**: Section header.
- Status**: Dropdown menu.
- Reference Number**: Text input field.
- Brokerage**: Section header.
- Currency ***: Text input field.
- Amount ***: Text input field.
- Booking**: Section header.
- Booking Options**:
 - ☐ No Booking
 - ☐ Advance
 - ☐ Arrears
 - ☐ Consider For Discount

Buttons: **Ok** and **Exit** at the bottom right.

4. On **Brokerage** screen, specify the details as required.
For information on fields, see the section: [Step 21. Brokerage](#)
5. On **Security Repo VAMI** screen, click **Revision Details**.
STEP RESULT: **Revision Schedule Details** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.74: Revision Schedule Details

Revision Details

1 Of 1 Go

Component	Revision date	Apply
-----------	---------------	-------

Ok Exit

6. On the **Revision Schedule Details** screen, specify the details as required.
For information on fields, see the below table:

Table 3.66: Revision Schedule Details - Field Description

Field	Description
Component	Displays Interest component
Revision Date	This is a mandatory field. Displays Rate revision date
Apply	This is a mandatory field. Displays whether revision is applied or not

7. On the **Security Repo VAMI** screen, click **Split Settlement**.
STEP RESULT: **Split Settlement** Screen is displayed.

Figure 3.75: Split Settlement

The screenshot shows the 'Split Settlement' window. At the top, there is a 'Contract Reference' field. Below it, the 'Split Settlement' section contains a table with columns: Amount Tag, Currency, and Basis Amount. The table has a header row and one data row. Below this, the 'Split Settlement Details' section contains a table with columns: Sequence Number, Branch, Customer, Account Currency, and Account. This table also has a header row and one data row. At the bottom right, there are 'Ok' and 'Exit' buttons.

8. On the **Split Settlement** screen, specify the details as required.
 9. On the **Split Settlement** screen, select a contract.
 10. On the **Split Settlement** screen, under the Split Settlement Details, click the **+** Icon.
- STEP RESULT: **Split Settlement** screen with New arrow is displayed.

Figure 3.76: Split Settlement with a new row added

The screenshot shows the 'Split Settlement' window. At the top, there is a 'Contract Reference' field. Below it, the 'Split Settlement' section contains a table with the following columns: 'Amount Tag', 'Currency', and 'Basis Amount'. The first row is selected, and a new row has been added below it. The 'Split Settlement Details' section below contains a table with the following columns: 'Branch', 'Customer', 'Account Currency', 'Account', 'Amount', 'Percentage of Proceeds', and 'Amount Tag'. The first row is selected, and a new row has been added below it. The window has 'Ok' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom right.

NOTE: This process of splitting the settlements for a contract is allowed on the principal, Interest (Anticipated Interest for new contracts), and charges.

11. On the **Split Settlement** screen, specify the details as required.
For information on fields, refer to the below table:

Table 3.67: Split Settlement - Field Description

Field	Description
Contract Reference	The selected contract reference number is displayed.
Amount Tag	The Amount Tag details from the contract is displayed.
Basis Amount	The Basis Amount details is displayed.
Sequence Number	The Sequence number details is displayed.
Branch	The Branch details is displayed. Click the search icon and select the branch as required.
Customer	The Customer number is displayed. Click the search icon and select the customer as required.
Account Currency	Click the search icon and select the account currency from the list displayed.
Account	Click the search icon and select the account details from the list displayed.
Amount	Specify the amount details as required.
Percentage of Proceeds	Specify the percentage as required for the split.
Amount Tag	Specify the amount tag details as required.

12. On **Security Repo VAMI** screen click **CIF Breakup**.

STEP RESULT: **CIF Breakup** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.77: CIF Breakup

Payment Type ☐ Amount ☐ Percentage

Refinance Amount

1 Of 1 Go

Customer Number *	Principal	Principal Change	Percentage
-------------------	-----------	------------------	------------

Exit

13. On **CIF Breakup** screen, specify the fields.
For more information on fields, see the below table:

Table 3.68: CIF Breakup - Field Description

Field	Description
Payment Type	Displays the payment type
Customer Number	Displays the customer number
Principal	Displays the principal amount
Principal Change	Displays the principal change
Percentage	Displays the percentage

14. On **Security Repo VAMI** screen click **Settlement**.

STEP RESULT: **Settlement** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.78: Settlement

15. On the **Settlement Details** screen, specify the details as required.
For information on fields, refer to the Settlement User Guide.
16. On the **Security Repo Vami** Screen, click **Payment Details**.
STEP RESULT: **Settlement** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.79: Settlement

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Settlement". Inside, there is a table with the following columns: **Component**, **Due Date**, **Amount Due**, **Amount Settled**, and **Amount Adjusted**. The table is currently empty. Above the table, there is a search bar with "1 Of 1" and a "Go" button. At the bottom right of the window, there are "Ok" and "Exit" buttons.

17. On the **Settlement Details** screen, specify the details as required.
For information on fields, see the below table:

Table 3.69: Settlement - Field Description

Field	Description
Component	Displays Component details
Due Date	Displays Payment due date
Amount Due	Displays Payment Due amount
Amount Settled	Displays Payment amount which is already settled
Amount Adjusted	Displays Adjustment amount

18. On the **Security Repo Vami** Screen, click **Messages**

STEP RESULT: **Advice Details** screen is displayed.

The screenshot shows a web application window titled "Advice Details". At the top, there is a red label "Contract Reference *" followed by a text input field. Below this, there is a section titled "Advice Details" which contains a table. The table has a header row with columns: "Advice Name", "Receiver", "Medium", "Suppress", and "Priority". Below the header, there is one data row. To the left of the table, there is a checkbox and the text "1 Of 1". At the bottom right of the window, there are two buttons: "Ok" and "Exit".

19. On the **Advice Details** screen, specify the details as required.

For information on fields, see the below table

Table 3.70: Advice Details - Field Description

Field	Description
Contract Reference	Displays Contract reference number
Advice Name	Displays the Advice name applicable for the contract
Receiver	Displays the Receiver ID
Medium	Displays the Message medium
Suppress	Displays whether message must be suppressed or not
Priority	Displays the message priority

20. On **Security Repo VAMI** screen, click **Interest**.

STEP RESULT: **ICCF** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.80: Interest

ICCF

Contract Reference

Main View Details

1 Of 1

Component

Currency

Event

Rate Type

Maximum Rate

Minimum

Grace Period

No Interest/Profit

Rate

Rate Code

Spread Adjustment

Waived

Discount

Amount

Component Description

Accrued Amount

Event Description

Accrual Required

Spread

Denominator Basis

Basis 366

Minimum Spread

Maximum Spread

Customer Margin

Effective Interest Rate

Negative Interest Allowed

External Pricing

Floating Rate Details

Interest/Profit Basis

Reset Tenor

Indicator

Fixing Date Movement

Rate Calculation Type

Code Usage

Rate Fixing Days

Alternative Risk-Free Rate

Alternative Risk-Free Rate Preferences

Lookback

Payment Delay

Lockout

Interest Rollover

Last Reset

Last Recent

Plain

Lookback Days

Payment Delay Days

Lockout Days

Base Computation Method

Spread/Margin Computation Method

Spread Adj Computation Method

Rate Compounding

Ok Exit

21. On **Interest Details** screen, specify the fields.

Table 3.71: Interest Details - Field Description

Field	Description
Interest Basis	The method in which the number of days are to be calculated for interest, charge, commission or fee components and whether their application is tenor based is displayed here based on the specification the user made at the product level. The user can choose to change it. The following are the options available: • 30(Euro)/360 • 30(US)/ 360 • Actual/360 • 30(Euro)/365 • 30(US)/365 • Actual/365 • 30(Euro)/Actual • 30(US)/Actual • Actual/Actual • 30(Euro)/364 • 30(US)/ 364 • Actual/364
Fixing Date Movement	Select the movements from the drop-down list. The available movements are: • Forward • Backward • None as per the requirement for the effective revision date.
Rate Fixing Days	Specified the rate fixing days, If rate fixing days is greater than zero, movement is selected either as forward or backward. If rate fixing days is zero, then fixing date movement will remain blank.

22. The system performs the following validations:
- It allows you to amend the interest rate from main interest component only.
 - Based on whether effective interest rate is positive or negative, the system assigns the rate to main component/negative component.
 - Back dated amendments are allowed with value date as last payment/amendment date whichever is later.
23. On **Security Repo VAMI** screen, click **Charges**.
STEP RESULT: **Charge Details** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.81: Charge Details

24. On the **Charge Details** screen, specify the details as required.
For more information on fields, see the below table

Table 3.72: Charges Details- Field Description

Field	Description
Contract Reference	Displays the contract reference number
Charge Association	
Creation ESN	Displays the Event Sequence number
Component	Displays the charge component
Rule	Displays the Charge Rule ID
Description	Displays the Charge Rule description
Consider as Discount	Displays whether Charge component must be considered for IRR calculation
Waived	Specify if user wants to waive the charge associated to the event
Accrual Required	Displays if charge must be accrued or not
External Pricing	Displays if charge is priced externally
Debit Customer as part of Billing	Displays if charge id debited from customer
Charge Application	
Creation ESN	Displays Event sequence number
Component	Displays Charge component
Tag Currency	Displays tag currency
Tag Amount	Displays tag amount
Charge Currency	Displays charge currency

Field	Description
Charge Amount	Displays Charge Amount
Consider as Discount	Displays if charge component must be considered for IRR calculation
Waived	Specify if the charge applied for the contract must be waived
Liquidated	Displays if charge is liquidated
Charge Liquidation	
Event Sequence Number	Displays event sequence number
Component	Displays charge component
Charge Currency	Displays charge currency
Charge Amount	Displays charge amount
Liquidated	Displays if charge is liquidate for the contract

25. On the **Securities Repo VAMI** screen, click **Tax**.

STEP RESULT: **Tax Details** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.82: Tax Details

26. On the **Tax Details** screen, specify the details as required.
For information on fields, refer to: [Step 31. Tax](#)
27. On the **Securities Repo VAMI** screen, click **MIS**.
STEP RESULT: **MIS Details** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.83: MIS Details

The screenshot displays the 'MIS Details' window with the following sections:

- Contract Reference ***: A text field with a red asterisk.
- MIS Group**: A dropdown menu with 'Default' selected.
- Link To Group**: A checkbox.
- Input**:
 - Link To Group**: A checkbox.
 - Related Reference**: A text field.
 - Related Account**: A text field.
 - Related Account**: A text field.
 - Rate Code**: A text field.
 - Spread**: A text field.
- Rate At**:
 - Rate Type**: A dropdown menu with 'Pool Code' and 'Contract Level' options.
 - Profit Method**: A dropdown menu.
 - Refinance Rate**: A text field.
 - Pool Code**: A text field.
 - Cost Code 1**: A text field.
 - Cost Code 2**: A text field.
 - Cost Code 3**: A text field.
 - Cost Code 4**: A text field.
 - Cost Code 5**: A text field.
- Transaction MIS**: A section with a 'MIS Group' dropdown and three text input fields.
- Composite MIS**: A section with a 'MIS Group' dropdown and three text input fields.
- Fund MIS**: A section with a 'MIS Group' dropdown and three text input fields.

At the bottom, there are tabs for 'Refinance Rates', 'Amendment Rate', 'Change Log', and 'Balance Transfer Log'. The 'Ok' and 'Exit' buttons are in the bottom right corner.

28. On **MIS Details** screen, specify the details as required.
For information on fields, refer to the MIS User Guide

3.19 Upload Deals of Amendment

From an external system, the user can upload Securities Deals that require amendment in Oracle Banking Treasury Management. The system will distinguish between the new and the deals that require amendment based on the action code of the uploaded record. For a contract requiring amendment, the action code is 'AMND'. If the action code is 'AMND', Oracle Banking Treasury Management will first check whether the deal exists in the system or not. If it does not exist in the system, an error message is displayed to notify that the deal cannot be amended. The Reference Number provided by the external system has to same if it is a new deal or if it is an amendment to an existing deal. When the user upload a new deal, the Reference Number will be displayed in the User Reference Number field for that deal. The User Reference Number will be the basis for checking whether the deal exists or not. The upload for contract amendment will trigger the 'AMND' event. The same event is triggered even when the amendment is done in the 'Contract Online' screen.

The fields that can be amended for a Securities Repo Deal are as follows:

- Verify Funds For Principal
- Verify Funds For Interest
- Verify Funds For Penalty Amount
- Verify Funds
- Holiday Currency
- Holiday Months
- Move Forward

-
- Move Payment Schedules
 - Move Revision Schedules
 - Move Disbursement schedules
 - Receivable Tracking Parameters
 - Liquidation – Auto/Manual
 - Status Control – Auto/Manual
 - Exposure Category
 - Risk Free Exposure Amount.
 - Internal Remarks
 - Demand Basis
 - Schedule Details
 - Settlement Details
 - The amendments through upload of the following fields are considered as financial amendment:
 - Currency
 - Counterparty
 - Amount
 - Booking Date
 - Value Date
 - Cr/Dr Branch Code
 - Cr/Dr Account Number
 - Holiday Currency
 - Commitment (Revolving/ Non- revolving)
 - Maturity Type
 - User Input Maturity Date

NOTE:

- If the request received has settlement details, then the values sent as part of the upload are uploaded.
- If Settlement Details are not sent and are maintained in the list of amendable fields, then the details corresponding to the parent contract is copied to the child contract.
- In case the request is a financial amendment, then the contract is reversed and rebooked. If it is non-financial amendment, then the normal amendment procedure is followed.
- In case of financial amendment, Settlement Instructions requires a special handling.

- The financial amendment can be done only through upload and not through fronted.

However, if the SGEN message is already generated then financial amendment upload is not allowed.

For amending a contract, if the source is null, it indicates that the contract is created in Oracle Banking Treasury Management and the user are not allowed to amend. If the value is not null, then the user is allowed to amend a contract.

3.19.1 Reverse and Rebooking Contracts

While reversing and rebooking the parent contract details including the subsystems are copied to a new contract, and the parent is reversed, and the screen is in the new mode so that any details of the contract is changed. It is validated that no payment messages have been sent for the Reversed FCC ref no. A configurable override is displayed. If the payment messages are generated, then the Cancellation request messages (REVSWIFT) are generated. At the branch parameters maintenance, the option 'User Ref No in Messages' must be checked. The user reference number and the external reference number of the parent contract number are copied to the new contract. Deletion of the new contract will delete the reversal of the parent contract and set the value of user ref number and external ref number in the parent contract from the child contract. Authorization of the new contract will authorize the parent contract. It will not be possible to delete or authorize the reversal of the parent contract reference number without deleting or authorizing the child.

3.20 Securities Repo Payment Input

1. On the Homepage, type **SRDPAMIN** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

STEP RESULT: **Securities Repo Payment Input** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.84: Securities Repo Payment Input

The screenshot displays the 'Security Repo Payment Input' window. It features several input sections:

- Contract Reference Number*** (required field)
- Syndication Reference Number**
- Counterparty** and **Counterparty Name**
- Status** and **Reject Reason**
- Date and Amounts for Population of Components Due**: Includes Value Date (YYYYMMDD), Limit Date (YYYYMMDD), Limit Amount, and Local Currency Equivalent with a 'Populate' button.
- Allocation of Amounts Paid**: Includes Net Amount Settled, Negative Amount Settled, Local Currency Equivalent, Total Pre-paid, and Local Currency Equivalent with an 'Allocate' button.
- Other Details**: Includes Liquidated Nominal, Local Currency Equivalent, and Discount Rate with a 'Sum' button.
- Payment Breakup**: A table with columns: Component, Pay Receive, Amount Due, Overdue, Amount Paid, Interest Prepaid, and Tax. It shows '1 Of 1' records.
- Bottom Bar**: Contains Maker Id, Date Time, Authorized By, Date Time, Contract Status, and an Exit button.

2. On the **Securities Repo Payment Input** screen, specify the details as required.
- For RFR contract on payment delay method, no penalty is charged for payment after actual due date and within payment delay days.
- For information on fields, see the below table

Table 3.73: Securities Repo Payment Input - Field Description

Field	Description
Contract Reference Number	Specify Contract reference number
Syndication Reference Number	Displays syndication reference number
Counterparty	Displays contract counterparty ID
Counterparty Name	Displays counterparty name
Status	Displays status of payment
Reject Reason	Specify the Reject reason Code for payment reversal message. The option list displays all valid code maintained in the system. Choose the appropriate one.
Outstanding Amount Currency	Displays outstanding amount currency
Outstanding Principal Amount	Displays the outstanding balance amount.
Outstanding Amount Repayment	Displays the outstanding amount repayment.
Effective From	Enter the date for which the rate must become applicable. Each rate that is defined for a Rate Code and Currency combination must have an Effective Date associated with it. This is the date on which the rate comes into effect. Once a rate comes into effect, it will be applicable till a rate with another Effective Date is given for the same Rate Code and Currency combination
Date and Amounts for Population of Components Due	
Value Date	Specify the value date.
Limit Date	Enter here the Limit Date for prepayments. If the user has given a payment limit date, the system shows all the components, which are due till the limit date.
Limit Amount	Enter the Limit amount for prepayment. If the user has given the amount limit in the Amount field, it shows all the schedules for the limit amount.
Local Currency Equivalent	Specify the local currency equivalent for the limit amount. The local currency equivalent is calculated using the standard rate in case of cross currency transactions.

Field	Description
Net Amount Settled	Enter the amount being paid for a particular component. This must be less than or equal to the total amount due for the component. If there are both positive and negative amounts are to be settled, then specify the net amount in this field.
Negative Amount Settled	The system displays the total negative amount that should be settled. Partial settlement of negative amount is restricted. Back dated payment of interest amount is allowed till last payment or amendment date whichever is later.
Local Currency Equivalent	Specify the local currency equivalent for the total paid amount. The local currency equivalent is calculated using the standard rate in case of cross currency transactions.
Total Pre-paid	Specify the prepaid amount.
Local Currency Equivalent	Specify the local currency equivalent for the total prepaid amount. The local currency equivalent is calculated using the standard rate in case of cross currency transactions.
Liquidated Nominal	Specify the Liquidated Nominal amount which is the amount that the user receives, when the user redeem a T-Bill on the maturity date. This is also known as the face value of the T-Bill. The discount rate is used to calculate the Net Present Value (NPV) of a T-Bill when it is liquidated before the liquidation date i.e. the actual value obtained on the T-Bill when the user redeem it prior to the maturity date.
Local Currency Equivalent	Specify the local currency equivalent for the liquidated nominal value of the amount. The local currency equivalent is calculated using the standard rate in case of cross currency transactions.
Discount Rate	Enter the discount rate. If the discount rate basis is Direct Input then the user has to enter the rate at which interest is to be discounted in this field.
Component	Displays the Component for which payment is done
Amount Due	Displays the amount due for the component that the user has to repay
Overdue	Displays the overdue amount
Amount Paid	Specify the paid amount.
Interest	Specify the interest prepaid for the component.
Tax	Specify the amount paid in tax.
Prepayment Penalty Rate	Displays the Prepayment penalty rate
Penalty Amount	Displays the penalty amount
Adjustment Amount	Displays the Adjustment amount
Additional Adjustment Amount	Displays the additional adjustment amount
Payment Remarks	Specify the payment remarks

3. The system validates that ,if there are outstanding positive or negative interest amounts related to multiple schedules, earlier schedules are fully paid before settling subsequent schedules.
4. On **Securities Repo Payment Input** screen, click **Events**
STEP RESULT: **Treasury Events** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.85: Treasury Events

5. On the **Treasury Events** screen, specify the details as required.
For information on fields, see the below table:

Table 3.74: Treasury Events - Field Description

Field	Description
Reference Number	Payment reference number automatically gets defaulted for the current payment.
Events	
Event Number	This is a Mandatory field. Displays the event sequence number
Event Code	Displays the event code
Description	Displays the event code description
Event Date	Displays the event date
Authorization Status	Displays the event authorization status
Maker Id	Displays the payment marker ID
Checker Id	Displays the payment checker ID

6. On the **Treasury Events** screen, click **Accounting Entries**.
Treasury Accounting Entries screen is displayed.

Figure 3.86: Treasury Accounting Entries

7. On the **Treasury Accounting Entries** screen, specify the details as required.
For information on fields, see the below table:

Table 3.75: Treasury Accounting Entries - Field Description

Field	Description
Reference Number	Displays the contract reference number
Event Number	Displays the event number
Event	Displays the event
Accounting Entries	
Event	Displays the event
Branch	Displays the account branch
Account	Displays the account number
Account Description	Displays the account description
Debit or Credit	Displays whether account is debited or credited
Amount Tag	Displays the related amount tag
Account Currency	Displays the account currency
Foreign Currency Amount	Displays the FCY amount
Rate	Displays the exchange rate
Local Currency Amount	Displays the local currency equivalent amount for a foreign currency payment
Date	Displays the event date
Value Date	Displays the event value date
Txn Code	Displays the transaction code

8. On the **Securities Repo Payment Input** screen, **Click Breakup**

STEP RESULT: **Schedule Breakup** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.87: Schedule Breakup

9. On the **Schedule Breakup** screen, specify the details as required.

For information on fields, see the below table:

Table 3.76: Schedule Breakup - Field Description

Field	Description
Component	The component getting paid is displayed.
Due Date	The due date of the component liquidated is displayed.
Amount Due	The amount outstanding for the liquidated component is displayed here.
Amount Paid	The user can see here the amount paid for the component as of the value date (the current system date).

10. On the **Securities Repo Payment Input** screen, **Click Settlement**

STEP RESULT: **Settlement Details** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.88: Settlement Details

Settlement Details

Contract Reference * Component

Account Details | Payment Details | Parties | Parties | Other Details

Settlement Details

1 Of 1 Go

Component	Currency	Debit or Credit	Account	Account Description	Account Branch	Account Currency	Netting Indicator	Ra
-----------	----------	-----------------	---------	---------------------	----------------	------------------	-------------------	----

Ok Exit

11. On the **Settlement Details** screen, specify the details as required.
For more information, refer settlement guide for settlement processing.
12. On the **Security Repo Payment Input** screen, click **Split Settlement**.
STEP RESULT: **Split Settlement** Screen is displayed.

Figure 3.89: Split Settlement

Contract Reference _____

Split Settlement

1 Of 1 Go

Amount Tag	Currency	Basis Amount
------------	----------	--------------

Split Settlement Details

1 Of 1 Go

Sequence Number	Branch	Customer	Account Currency	Account
-----------------	--------	----------	------------------	---------

Ok Exit

13. On the **Split Settlement** screen, specify the details as required.
For more information [Step 7. Split Settlement](#)
14. On **Security Repo Payment Input** screen, click **Advice**.
STEP RESULT: **Advice Details** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.90: Advice Details

Contract Reference *

Advice Details

1 Of 1 Go

Advice Name	Receiver	Medium	Suppress	Priority

Ok Exit

15. On the **Advices** screen, specify the details as required.
For information on fields, see the below table

Table 3.77: Advices- Field

Field	Description
Contract Reference	Displays contract reference number
Advice Name	Displays the advice name
Receiver	Displays the receiver name
Medium	Displays the medium details
Suppress	Displays the suppress details
Priority	Displays the Priority details

16. On **Security Repo Payment Input** screen click **Charges**.
STEP RESULT: **Charge Details** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.91: Charge Details

The screenshot shows the 'Charge Details' window. At the top, there is a 'Contract Reference' field with a red asterisk indicating it is required. Below this is a 'Details' tab. The 'Charge Association' section contains a table with columns: Creation ESN, Component (with a red asterisk), Rule, Description, Consider as Discount, Waived, Accrual Required, External Pricing, and Debit Customer as part of Billing. The 'Charge Application' section contains a table with columns: Creation ESN, Component (with a red asterisk), Tag Currency, Tag Amount, Charge Currency, Charge Amount, Consider as Discount, Waived, and Liquidated. Both tables have a 'Go' button and a '1 Of 1' indicator. At the bottom right, there are 'Ok' and 'Exit' buttons.

17. On the **Charge Details** screen, specify the details as required.
For more information on fields, see the below table:

Table 3.78: Charges Details- Field Description

Field	Description
Contract Reference	Displays the contract reference number
Charge Association	
Creation ESN	Displays the Event Sequence number
Component	Displays the charge component
Rule	Displays the Charge Rule ID
Description	Displays the Charge Rule description
Consider as Discount	Displays whether Charge component must be considered for IRR calculation
Waived	Specify if user wants to waive the charge associated to the event
Accrual Required	Displays if charge must be accrued or not
External Pricing	Displays if charge is priced externally
Debit Customer as part of Billing	Displays if charge id debited from customer
Charge Application	
Creation ESN	Displays Event sequence number
Component	Displays Charge component
Tag Currency	Displays tag currency
Tag Amount	Displays tag amount
Charge Currency	Displays charge currency
Charge Amount	Displays charge amount
Consider as Discount	Displays if charge component is considered for IRR calculation
Waived	Specify if the charge applied for the contract must be waived
Liquidated	Displays if charge is liquidated
Charge Liquidation	
Event Sequence Number	Displays event sequence number.
Component	Displays charge component
Charge Currency	Displays charge currency
Charge Amount	Displays the charge amount
Liquidated	Displays if charge is liquidate for the contract

18. On the **Security Payment Repo Input** screen, click **Tax**.

STEP RESULT: **Tax Details** screen is displayed.

Table 3.79: Tax Details - Description

Field	Description
Tax Scheme	Choose A Tax Scheme from the Option list
Product Description	Add Product code and its description like other sub system
Scheme Description	System defaults scheme description
Tax Details	
Tax Rule	System defaults the Tax Rule mapped to the scheme for Tax computation
Tax Component	The method of tax application defined for the Tax Rule will be applied on this component
Basis Amount Tag	Amount tag on which Tax is computed
Event	Specify the event for which the tax is applicable.
Tax type	The type of tax, decides the bearer the tax. It could be the bank or the customer. A customer bears withholding type of tax and the tax component is debited to the customer's account. The bank bears an expense type of tax and the tax component is booked to a tax expense account.
Minimum Interest Rate Code for Tax	Specify the rate code for Tax
Currency Details	
Currency	Specify the currency from the list of option
Maximum Interest Period for Tax	Specify the maximum interest period for the tax
Period Unit	Specify the period as • Days • Months • Year
Minimum Interest Amount for Tax	Specify the minimum Interest amount for the tax

20. On the **Securities Repo Payment Input** screen, click **MIS**.

STEP RESULT: **MIS Details** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.93: MIS Details

21. On **MIS Details** screen, specify the details as required.
For more information, refer to the MIS User Guide.
22. On the **MIS Details** screen, click **Refinance Rate**.
STEP RESULT: **Refinance Rate** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.94: Refinance Rate

23. On the **Refinance Rate** screen, specify the details as required.
24. On the **MIS Details** screen, click **Amendment Rate**.
STEP RESULT: **Amendment Rate** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.95: Amendment Rate

Amendment Rate

Contract Reference

Rate Code

Rate Type Fixed

Spread

Ok Exit

25. On the **MIS Details** screen, click **Change Log**.
 STEP RESULT: **Change Log** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.96: Change Log

Contract Change Log

1 Of 1 Go

MIS Class	Transaction Date	Old MIS Code	New MIS
-----------	------------------	--------------	---------

Ok Exit

26. On the **Change Log** screen, specify the details as required.
27. On the **MIS Details** screen, click **Balance Transfer Log**.
 STEP RESULT: **Balance Transfer Log** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.97: Balance Transfer Log

Contract Reference _____

Balance Transfer Log

1 Of 1 Go

Branch	Period Code	Financial Year	General Ledger Code	Transfer Indicator	MIS Class	Transaction Date
--------	-------------	----------------	---------------------	--------------------	-----------	------------------

Cancel

28. On the **Balance Transfer Log** screen, specify the details as required.
 29. On the **Securities Repo Payment Input** screen, click **Fields**.
- STEP RESULT: **Fields** screen is displayed.

Figure 3.98: Fields

Contract Reference Number _____

Fields

1 Of 1 Go

Field Name	Value	Mandatory	Value Description
------------	-------	-----------	-------------------

Ok Exit

30. On **Fields** screen, specify the details as required.
- For information on fields, see the below table

Table 3.80: Fields - Field Description

Field	Description
Contract Reference Number	Displays contract reference number
Field Name	Defaults user defined field name mapped to the product
Value	Specify the UDF value
Mandatory	Defaults the mandatory flag from user defined maintenance screen
Value Description	Displays the user defined value description

3.21 Process Repayments

When the user makes a Securities repo deal, the user also decide on the terms of the repayment of the placement or borrowing.

The user may have your repayment schemes; for example, the user may prefer monthly repayments of interest or the repayment of the principal on maturity, and so on. Or, the user may design repayment schedules to suit the convenience of your customer. Your customer may want the repayments done daily, instead of every week, for example.

In Oracle Banking Treasury Management, the user can customize your repayment schedules for a money market product. The same schedules will, by default, apply to the deals involving the product. However, when processing a specific deal, the user can change the repayment schedule, which it inherits, from the product it involves.

3.21.1 Define Schedules for Repayment

Define repayment schedules for the interest or interest types of ICCB components like a tenor based charge or fee and the principal of a Securities Repo deal while defining a product.

The attributes of the schedules for a product are defined through the Product Preferences screen. The following are the attributes of a repayment schedule:

- Mode of liquidation - auto or manual. This is changed at the time of deal processing.
- Liquidation of back valued schedules upon initiation of a deal. This is changed at the time of deal processing based on requirement.

However, for a deal, the user can have:

- Only a maturity schedule for the principal and no interim schedules
- Interim schedules for the interest
- The only normal type of schedules for interest. Schedules cannot be capitalized or amortized
- No schedules for commission, charge or fees

A discussion on these attributes follows in this topic.

The Automatic Contract Update function executed as part of the SR Batch Daily routine automatically liquidates schedules that the user has marked for auto liquidation. If schedules are marked for manual liquidation, the user will have to liquidate them through the Contract Schedule Payments function.

Once the user specifies the attributes of schedules in the Product Preferences screen, the default schedules, which the user wants, applied to the deals involving the product, and are specified through the Product Schedules screen.

At the time of deal processing, the user can change the schedules which have been inherited by the deal, to suit your needs.

If the Interest specified is an amount and not a rate (Special type of Interest), the user must enter this amount for the interest component. The user must specify the number of schedules for the component (interim schedules and maturity schedule). The user can give the Start Date, Frequency and Unit again or let the details inherited from the product remain.

NOTE: If schedules are not defined for the product, then the borrowings or placements under it will have bullet (or balloon) schedules by default. That is, all the components is liquidated on Maturity. Since for a money market deal, the principal repaid is always at Maturity, the user need not define a schedule

3.21.2 Mode of Liquidation

Components of a deal are liquidated automatically or manually. In the Product Preferences screen, the user must indicate whether the mode of liquidation of repayment schedules is to be automatic.

Specify Auto liquidation if the user want the components of a deal (involving a product) to be liquidated automatically. If the user so specify, a schedule is automatically liquidated the day it falls due, during the beginning of day processing (by the Automatic Contract Update function.)

Now, consider the following situation:

- The user has indicated automatic liquidation
- The scheduled date falls on a holiday, and
- The user has specified (through the contract preferences screen), that the holiday be ignored while calculating the scheduled date.

In such a situation, a repayment falling on a holiday would be processed according to your specifications for holiday handling (in the SR Branch Parameters screen). It would be as follows:

- If the user has specified that processing has to be done (on the last working day before the holiday) for automatic events right up to the day before the next working day, the schedule falling on the holiday will be liquidated during the end of day processing on the last working day before the holiday.
- If the user has specified that processing has to be done only up to the System Date (today), then only those events scheduled for today (the last working day before the holiday) will be processed. The events falling due on holiday are processed on the next working day after the holiday, during the beginning of day processing.

In such a situation, a repayment falling on a holiday would be processed according to your specifications for holiday handling (in the SR Branch Parameters screen). It would be as follows:

- If the user has specified that processing has to be done (on the last working day before the holiday) for automatic events right up to the day before the next working day, the schedule falling on the holiday will be liquidated during the end of day processing on the last working day before the holiday.
- If the user has specified that processing has to be done only up to the System Date (today), then only those events scheduled for today (the last working day before the holiday) will be processed. The events falling due on holiday are processed on the next working day after the holiday, during the beginning of day processing.

- If a borrowing has been defined for verification of funds before automatic liquidation (through the Contract Online Preferences screen), those components whose schedule dates fall on the same day will be liquidated in the order the user has specified when defining the product.
- If the funds are insufficient, the liquidation is done to the extent of the available balance in the repayment account. The components will be liquidated in the order that the user specify. This will be reported in the Exception Report generated at the end of every day, automatically (by the Automatic Contract Update function). If the user has not specified that the funds be verified, and there are insufficient funds in the repayment account.
- The repayment account will be put into a debit balance (if the user has allowed overdraft) and the schedules for the components liquidated to the extent of the debit balance that the user has allowed for the account. The user can liquidate beyond the allowed debit balance for an account after overriding a warning message. This override will be recorded for audit trail purposes. Debit interest, as specified for the type of account (current or savings); is applied on the debit balance.
- If the repayment account has not been defined with an overdraft, the liquidation will not be processed.
- If the user specify manual liquidation for deals involving the product, then liquidation must be done manually, through the Manual Liquidation screen.

3.21.3 Liquidate Back Valued Schedules During Initiation

Indicate whether for a backdated deal that has schedules before today's date; the schedules have to be liquidated when the deal is initiated. A backdated deal is one, which has an initiation date, which falls before today's date.

3.21.4 Liquidate Back Valued Schedules During Initiation

The user has to specify whether the payment method for the main interest is to be bearing, discounted, or true discounted. This cannot be changed at the time of processing a deal.

3.21.5 When the Repayment Schedule Date is a Holiday

The user has specified that repayment schedules must be generated automatically once the user indicate the frequency, number and the date of the first repayment. When the system computes the repayment dates based on these values, there is a chance that one or more schedules fall due on holiday. In such a case, the user has two choices:

- Ignore the holiday and retain the scheduled due date or
- Move it either backwards or forward, by specifying so. If the user specify that holidays are to be ignored, the scheduled dates will be fixed without taking the holidays into account. In such a case, if a scheduled date falls on a holiday, the processing of such a schedule is determined by your holiday handling specifications for automatic processes, in the Branch Parameters screen.
- If the user has specified that processing has to be done on the previous working day for automatic events right up to the day before the next working day the schedule falling on the holiday will be liquidated during end-of-day processing on the previous working day.

- If the user has specified that processing has to be done only up to the System Date, then only the events scheduled for the System Date will be processed. The events of the holiday are processed on the next working day during beginning -of-day processing.

3.21.6 Move Schedules Forward or Backward

A scheduled date falls on a holiday, and the user has not specified that holidays are to be ignored at the time of schedule definition. In such a case, the user must indicate the movement of the scheduled date forward or backwards to the next working day, or the previous working day, respectively. Since the scheduled date itself is moved to a working day, the payment is processed on the due date.

3.21.7 Move Schedule Dates Across the Month

If the user has chosen to move a schedule falling due on holiday to the next working day, or on the previous working day, and it crosses over into another month, the scheduled date is moved only if the user indicates. If not, the scheduled date will be kept in the same month.

3.21.8 Specify the Holiday Currency

The user can specify the country of the deal currency for which the holiday table must be checked before drawing the payment schedules related to the deal. In case a schedule falls on a holiday, and the user has specified that the schedule is moved forward or backwards, the movement happens according to the holidays in this country. By default, the currency to be checked is the deal currency. If a currency other than this is specified, the holiday table will be checked for both the currencies.

3.21.9 When the Repayment Schedule Date is a Holiday

The user can specify the Financial center of the deal for which the holiday table must be checked before drawing the payment schedules related to the deal. In case a schedule falls on a holiday, and the user has specified that the schedule is moved forward or backwards, the movement happens according to the holidays in this Financial center.

3.21.10 Cascade Schedules

The question of cascading schedules arises only if:

- The user has specified that a schedule falling due on holiday has to be moved forward or backwards
- The schedule has been defined with a definite frequency
- If the user has indicated that schedules must be cascaded, the scheduled date for the next payable schedule will depend on how the scheduled date was moved for a holiday.

The following example illustrates how this concept of cascading schedules functions:

- When the user cascade schedules, the last schedule (at maturity), however, will be liquidated on the original maturity date and will not be changed like the interim schedules. Hence, for this particular schedule, the interest calculation days may vary from those of previous schedules

3.22 Roll over a deal

A rollover is a renewal of a deal. Instead of liquidating a deal on maturity, the user can roll it over into a new deal. The outstanding principal of the old deal is rolled over with or without the interest outstanding on it. When a deal is rolled over (renewed), it is processed in the following manner:

- The original deal is liquidated, and,

- A new deal is initiated

The user can rollover a deal that the user are processing provided it is allowed for the product the money market deal involves.

For a product with rollover defined, specify if deals involving the product must inherit:

- The attributes defined for the ICCB components (interest, charges and fees) from the product, or
- Those defined for the initial deal. This gains significance if the user changed the attributes that the (initial) deal acquired from the product. The rolled over deal will acquire the changed attributes.

In addition, the user has to specify the following for a product defined with rollover:

- Whether it is to be rolled over along with outstanding interest
- Whether the interest that has been accrued on a placement is to be considered a part of the 'utilized amount' for the purpose of risk tracking if the user are rolling over a placement with interest.
- Whether tax has to be applied on the rolled over deal
- Whether the principal of the rolled over interest must be taxed

However, when processing a deal, the user can change the attributes that the deal acquires from the product. At the time of processing the deal, the user can indicate if a rollover is to be automatic or manual; the maturity type (fixed, call or notice); the maturity date for a fixed maturity deal; and the notice days.

The user must also indicate if:

- Only the outstanding principal is to be rolled over,
- The outstanding principal is to be rolled over with interest, or
- If a special amount is to be rolled over. (if a part of the principal and interest from the old deal has been liquidated and only the outstanding principal - with or without interest - is rolled over, it is called a special amount).

When a deal is rolled over, the new contract continues to have the reference number of the old deal.

3.23 Specify Rollover for a Product

When defining a product, the user has to specify whether deals involving the product is rolled over. If rollover has been allowed for a product, all the deals involving the product can, by default, be rolled over.

NOTE: However, a deal involving such a product is rolled over only if it is not liquidated on its Maturity Date. Choose not to rollover a deal that involves a product with the rollover facility. The user can indicate this when processing the deal.

This topic contains the following:

- 1) [*Mode of Rollover \(Manual or Automatic\)*](#)
- 2) [*Impact of Liquidation Mode on Rollover*](#)

3.23.1 Mode of Rollover (Manual or Automatic)

For a deal involving a product for which a rollover is allowed, the user must specify the mode of rollover - automatic or manual - during processing.

3.23.2 Impact of Liquidation Mode on Rollover

The mode of liquidation of a deal (automatic or manual) has the following impacts while executing the rollover:

Specification	Treatment
Auto liquidation and auto rollover	The old deal is liquidated and a new one initiated on the Maturity Date of the deal during the BOD (Beginning Of Day) run of the Automatic Contract Update function. If the Maturity Date falls on a holiday, then the liquidation and the rollover is processed as per your holiday handling specifications in the Branch Parameters screen. If the user specified (in the Branch Parameters screen) that processing has to be done today (the last working day before the holiday) for automatic events right up to the day before the next working day, the schedule falling on the holiday is liquidated during end of day processing on the last working day before the holiday. If the user specified that processing has to be done only up to the System Date (today), then only the events scheduled for today (the last working day before the holiday) is processed. The events falling on the holiday is processed on the immediate working day after the holiday, during the beginning of day processing
Auto liquidation (of principal) and manual rollover	The old deal is liquidated automatically on the Maturity Date. If the deal has to be rolled over, the rollover instructions must be specified for the deal before the Maturity Date. If the contract has not been liquidated because of lack of funds in the repayment account, the user can give rollover instructions even after the maturity date saying that the contract has to be rolled over as of the maturity date.
Manual liquidation (of principal)	Rollover has to be manual. The deal will not be liquidated by the Auto Liquidation function. The user can either liquidate it or specify that it has to be rolled over. This is specified at any time - before or after the Maturity Date of the deal, if the contract has not yet been liquidated.

If the user has defined that the deal be liquidated manually, the user cannot roll it over automatically. When a deal is rolled over or renewed for the interest, charge or fee components, it can assume the following attributes:

- Those of the product involving the deal being rolled over, or
- Those of the old deal itself

Specify this at the time of deal processing (of the old deal).

3.23.3 Roll over a Contract Manually

Rollover a deal manually through the Rollover Details screen.

If a deal has to be rolled over:

- The latest activity on the deal has to be authorized
- It must be past its maturity date; and

- It must not have been liquidated

Two activities take place when a deal is rolled over:

- The original deal is liquidated and
- A new deal is initiated

However, Reference Number of the renewed or rolled over deal is the same as that of the old deal.

3.23.4 Specify the Maturity Details

The Maturity Type, which the user has specified for the old deal, will apply to the deal being rolled over, by default. However, the user can change the Maturity Type through this screen. If the maturity type is to be changed, the user has to specify the new Maturity Type for the rolled over or renewed deal. It could be:

Maturity Type	Details
Fixed	This type of deal has a fixed Maturity Date. For a deal with a fixed maturity date, the user enter the changed date on which the deal needs to be liquidated.
Call	The Maturity Date is not fixed. The deal is liquidated anytime.
Notice	The deal is liquidated at a certain period of notice. The number of days of notice must be specified in this screen. This is only for information purposes. Whenever a report is generated on a notice type of deal, the notice days is mentioned on it. For a deal with notice type of maturity, the user has to enter the Maturity Date once the notice is issued to the counterparty (customer)

For a deal maturing at notice, enter the notice period (in days) in this field. This is only for information purposes. Whenever a report is generated on a notice type of deal, the notice days is mentioned on it. For a deal with notice type of maturity, the user has to enter the Maturity Date once the notice is issued to the counterparty (customer).

3.24 Automatic Processing

While discussing the various events in the life cycle of a deal, we have referred to the Automatic Contract Update function that carries out these events. In this chapter, we shall discuss the features of this function.

The Automatic Contract Update function must be executed at least twice during the day, once before the user begin transaction-related activities for the day (that is, as a part of the beginning of day activities) and once after the user has finished all the transaction-related activities for the day. If any transaction-related activities are carried out after the function are run as part of end of day (EOD) activities, the user has to execute it again so that the processing that is necessitated by the transaction-related activity carried out.

3.25 Automatic Events in the Lifecycle of a Deal

The following are the various events in the life cycle of a deal carried out automatically. Group them into automatic events that take place Beginning-of Day (BOD) and those that take place End of day (EOD).

3.25.1 Begin of Day Processes

Below are the processes:

- Initiation of a deal with a Value Date in the future
- Application of the appropriate interest rates for deals with Floating Interest

- Application of rate changes with a Value Date in the future
- Liquidation of a scheduled repayment (interim or at maturity)
- Rollover of a deal
- Change of deal status as part of the aging analysis process
- Automatic events falling on a holiday and scheduled to take place on the day after the holiday

3.25.2 End of Day Processes

Below are the processes:

- Periodic accrual of ICCB components
- Generation of reports
- Automatic events falling on a holiday and scheduled to take place on the day before the next working day.

The user might have noticed that some activities carried out, automatically would be done so only on specific instruction from the user. The following are such activities:

- Liquidation of a scheduled repayment
- Rollover of a deal

3.25.3 Process During Beginning of Day

All the automatic events scheduled for the day, except the accrual of ICCB components, is carried out when the Automatic Contract Update function is executed during the beginning of day operations.

In addition, all the activities scheduled for the holidays is carried out if the current system date follows a holiday(s) and the user has specified that events falling on holidays must be processed on the immediate working day succeeding the holiday.

3.25.4 Process During End of Day

When the function is executed during the end of day activities, the processing is carried out for:

- Accrual of ICCB components scheduled for the day;
- Any Value Dated change (additional disbursements, change in interest rates, etc.) that were done during the day with a Value Date as the current system date; and
- Activities scheduled for holidays (if the current system date is preceded by holiday(s) and the user has specified that activities falling on holidays must be processed on the last working day preceding a holiday).

3.25.5 Process for Holidays

Any automatic event that is scheduled for a holiday is processed as per your specifications in the Branch Parameters table:

- If the user has specified that processing has to be done on the last working day (before a holiday) for automatic events that fall due on holidays, the events falling on the holiday is processed during end of day on the last working day before the holiday.

- If the user has specified that processing has to be done only up to the System Date (today), then only the events scheduled for the system date (the last working day before the holiday) is processed. The events that fall due on the holiday is processed on the working day immediately following the holiday, during beginning of day processing

3.25.6 Initiate a Future Value Dated Deal

A 'future dated' deal is one that has a Value Date that is later than the date on which it is booked. The Automatic Contract Update function will initiate the deal on the Value Date of the deal during BOD processing.

If there were holiday(s) preceding today, future dated deals that were dated for the holiday(s) will also be initiated if the user has specified that events falling on a holiday must be processed on the next working day.

All the initiation related entries specified for the product, that the deal involves, is passed automatically. If currency conversions are involved, the conversion rates as of today is picked up from the Currency Table.

If for some reason, a deal scheduled for initiation today is not initiated, it is reported in the Exception Report generated during EOD processing.

For a future dated deal falling due today, if there is also a rate change today, the interest amounts are also recalculated for the schedules.

3.25.7 Process an Automatic Repayment

For deals that are defined with automatic liquidation of repayments, the liquidation is carried out by the Automatic Contract Update function. It could be an interim repayment schedule liquidation or a maturity schedule liquidation. The schedule, whether an interim schedule or a maturity schedule, is automatically liquidated on the day it falls due, during the beginning of day processing.

Now, if the user has indicated automatic liquidation, the scheduled date falls on a holiday, and the user has specified that the holiday is ignored (through the Contract Preferences screen), the liquidation falling due on holiday, would depend on your holiday handling specifications in the Branch Parameters screen:

- If the user specify that processing has to be done today (the last working day before the holiday) for automatic events right up to the day before the next working day the schedule is falling on the holiday is liquidated during the end of day processing on the last working day before the holiday.
- If the user specify that processing has to be done only up to the System Date (today), then only the events scheduled for today (the last working day before the holiday) is processed. The events falling on the holiday is processed on a working day immediately following the holiday, during the beginning of day processing.

If a placement has been defined for verification of funds before automatic liquidation, the components whose for which the schedule dates fall on the same day is liquidated in the order that the user specified while defining the product. If the funds are insufficient, the liquidation is done to the extent of the available balance in the repayment

account, again, following the order of liquidation of components specified by the user. If this is so, it is reported in the Exception Report generated at the end of every day, automatically (by the Automatic Contract Update function).

If the user has not specified that the funds are to be verified, and the funds are insufficient:

- The repayment account is put into a debit balance if an overdraft is allowed, and the schedules for the components is liquidated to the extent of the debit balance allowed. If it crosses the extent of debit balance allowed, the liquidation is done with an overdraft override that is automatically recorded. The debit interest that is applicable to the account (current or savings) is applied.
- If the repayment account has not been defined with the overdraft, the liquidation will not be processed.

The liquidation order is helpful when the user wants to liquidate the dues in a certain order: say interest (or interest type of components) first and then the principal. If the deal has been defined with Floating interest, and an interest revision falls due today, the revised rate is applied before the repayment is processed.

3.25.8 Advices Generated for a Repayment

Advices are generated by the Automatic Contract Update function during beginning of day processing. While defining a product the user may have specified that an advice is to be generated to intimate the customer every time a payment has been liquidated. This will apply to all deals involving the product (refer chapter on product definition). However, for a particular deal, the user can suppress this advice. If a repayment advice has been specified for a deal, it is generated by the Automatic Contract Update function when the user run it at the beginning of day.

3.25.9 Automatic Rollover of a Deal

A Rollover is renewal of a deal. For a deal to be rolled over it:

- Must be past its Maturity Date

- Must not have been liquidated

If the user has specified automatic liquidation and automatic rollover for a deal, the old deal is liquidated and a new one initiated on the Maturity Date of the deal during the BOD (Beginning of Day) run of the Automatic Contract Update function.

If the Maturity Date falls on a holiday, then the liquidation and the rollover is processed as per your holiday handling specifications in the Branch Parameters screen.

If the user specified that processing has to be done today (the last working day before the holiday) for automatic events right up to the day before the next working day, the schedule falling on the holiday is liquidated during end of day processing on the last working day before the holiday.

If the user has specified that processing has to be done only up to the System Date (today), then only the events scheduled for today (the last working day before the holiday) is processed. The events of the holiday is processed on the next working day after the holiday, during beginning of day processing.

If the user has defined that the deal be liquidated manually, the user cannot roll it over automatically.

When a deal is rolled over or renewed for the interest, commission, charge or fee components, it can assume the following attributes:

- Those of the product involving the deal being rolled over
- Those of the original deal itself

Specify this at the time of deal processing (of the old deal).

3.25.10 Advices for Rollover

When creating a product, the user can opt to generate an advice that the user intimates the customer that a deal (involving her) has been rolled over or renewed. This specification will apply to all deals involving the product.

However, for a particular deal, the user can suppress this advice. If an advice for renewal of the deal has been specified, it is generated during BOD processing.

3.25.11 Automatic Status Changes

A placement that is yet to reach a repayment date, or on which repayments are being made regularly, is considered as having a 'Active' status. When a repayment is not done on the schedule date, the user may want to do aging analysis for the placement.

If the user has specified status and indicate that they be changed automatically, then the status change is done during BOD processing on the day the aging is due.

The user can do aging analysis by changing the status of a placement on which payment(s) are defaulted. At any time, the user can generate reports of deals, with details of aging, to facilitate the follow up process for repayment.

- Active - This is when repayments on a placement are done as per schedule.

- Past Due Obligation (PDO) - This is when repayments on a placement have been stopped but the accruals on the accruable components are still being done (There is still a chance of repayment of the deal).
- Non-accrual basis (NAB) - When the placement acquires this status all accruals for the placement are stopped (The chances of repayment diminish further).
- Write-off (WRO) - This is when the placement is written off and all accrual entries are reversed.

The user want a placement under this product to move from status to status in the order in which they are mentioned here. For such a condition, the user can indicate the number of days after which each component must move to the status being defined (these can differ for a maturity schedule and an interim schedule).

According to the number of days of default defined for each component, a placement will first be moved to PDO from Active status, then to NAB and lastly to WRO status.

The user can also indicate the change of GL if any when a component comes to a particular status, and the messages to be generated at each status change.

A 'forward' status change is one in which the status changes from one to the next. In our example, the movement from Active to PDO, PDO to NAB and NAB to Write Off are all forward changes. A 'reverse' status change is one in which the status changes from one to the previous. Such a situation arises when a payment is made on a placement with a status other than Active.

If the user specify that reverse changes have to be carried out automatically, the status will be changed when a payment is made on a placement with a status other than Active. If the user specify that reverse changes should not be automatic; the status remains unchanged even if a repayment is made on the placement. The status has to be changed by the user through the Contract Processing function. A reverse change may also become necessary when the number of days of default is increased for a product.

If the user specify that forward changes or reverse changes have to be carried out automatically, the status changes will be carried out by the Automatic Contract Update function when it is run either during Beginning of Day processes on the day the change falls due.

If the day on which the forward or reverse status change is due happens to be a holiday, then, the processing depends upon your specifications in the Branch Parameters screen.

- If the user has specified that processing has to be done today (the last working day before the holiday) for automatic events right up to the day before the next working day, the events falling on the holiday will be processed during end of day on the last working day before the holiday.

3.25.12 Accrual of ICCB Components

When the users are defining the interest, commission, charge or fee components (ICCB components) for an MM product, the user must specify whether accruals have to be done for the accruable ICCB components. The user can specify this through the Product ICCB Details screen.

If accruals must be done, the frequency of accrual must also be specified for the product (through the Product Preferences screen), at the time of product definition.

For all deals for which accruals fall due today, the Automatic Contract Update function will pass the accrual entries. Accrual of interest, commission, charge or fee is done during the end of day processing of the Automatic Contract Update function.

In some cases, for example, if a manual liquidation is done, the accrual entries is passed immediately by the system. If this falls on a holiday, the accruals is done as per your holiday handling specifications for automatic processes, in the Branch Parameters screen.

- If the user specified that processing has to be done today (the last working day before the holiday) for automatic events right up to the day before the next working day, the events falling on the holiday will be processed during end of day on the last working day before the holiday.
- If the user has specified that processing has to be done only up to the System Date (today), then only the events scheduled for today (the last working day before the holiday) will be processed. The events of the holiday will be processed on the next working day after the holiday, during beginning of day processing.

The accrual and income accounts will be picked up based on your definition in the Chart of Accounts. An Accrual Control Journal is generated by the Automatic Contract Update function, reporting the details of the accruals performed.

For a placement on which there is a default in payment, the user can specify that aging analysis must be done. This analysis involves the change of status of a deal. When the status is changed, the user can also specify that the accruals on the deal must be stopped. For such deals, the accrual entries will not be passed; they will only be calculated and reported in the Accrual Control Journal under 'Memo Accruals'.

3.25.12.1 Contents of the Accrual Control Journal

The memo accrual function will give the user the latest accrual amounts for all components of a live deal without actually passing the accrual entries. The memo accrual function generates the Memo Accrual Control Journal that

reports the accrued amounts for the various components of the deal, (like interest, commission, charge or fee) that are due on each deal as of the current system date.

3.25.13 SGEN Messages Generation

The system can send SGEN messages 'n' number of days before the due date where 'n' is the value maintained as settlement days in 'Currency Definition' screen for Repo deals. This generation is done for the following events:

- INIT- Initiation
- LIQD - Liquidation
- ROLL - Rollover
- VAMI - Value dated Amendment (Principal Increase)
- CMPY - Cash Margin Pay
- CMRV - Cash Margin Receive

In the case of future-dated events of contracts, the SGEN messages are required to be sent before the value date or payment date. For such contracts, the system generates the settlement message after taking into account both currency holidays and local holidays maintained. It generates the SWIFT messages in the BOD batch.

For SGEN Message on contract initiation, when the SGEN date is calculated as the branch date or lesser than the branch date, the system sends out an online SGEN message during contract initiation itself.

When you reverse a contract for which SGEN has been generated, the system displays an appropriate override message. If you accept the override and continue with contract reversal, the system generates the Cancellation request messages MT 292 /192 (REVSWIFT).

You can maintain payment messages either at the SGEN event or at the respective events only, not at both levels. You can also maintain a product without the SGEN event and attach the payment message in the respective events.

3.25.14 RFR Enabling for SGEN

In the case of RFR contracts with Payment delay preferences, the SGEN messages are required to be sent before the due date considering the maturity date + payment Delay days along with the currency settlement days maintained. For such contracts, the system generates the settlement message after considering the currency holidays maintained. It generates the SGEN messages during BOD.

3.25.14.1 Look back without Payment delay SGEN Generation

Table 3.81: Look back without Payment delay

Details	Values
Year Basis	360
Principal	\$100,000,000.00
Value Date	Mon, 03-Jun-19

Details	Values
Maturity Date	Tue, 18-Jun-19
Look back	5
Payment Delay Days	0
Currency	USD
Sgen	2-Working days
Modules Applicable	SR

Rate published	Rate For	Contract Calculation Date	SOFR	No. days	Notional Principal	Interest
28-May-19	27-May-19	03-Jun-19	0.08	1	\$100,000.00	\$0.22
29-May-19	28-May-19	04-Jun-19	0.081	1		\$0.23
30-May-19	29-May-19	05-Jun-19	0.069	1		\$0.19
31-May-19	30-May-19	06-Jun-19	0.077	1		\$0.21
03-Jun-19	31-May-19	07-Jun-19	0.081	3		\$0.68
04-Jun-19	03-Jun-19	10-Jun-19	0.07	1		\$0.19
05-Jun-19	04-Jun-19	11-Jun-19	0.069	1		\$0.19
06-Jun-19	05-Jun-19	12-Jun-19	0.069	1		\$0.19
07-Jun-19	06-Jun-19	13-Jun-19	0.065	1		\$0.18
10-Jun-19	07-Jun-19	14-Jun-19	0.066	3	SGEN (Payment Message)	\$0.55
11-Jun-19	10-Jun-19	17-Jun-19	0.071	1		\$0.20
		18-Jun-19				
Total Amount						\$3.03

3.25.14.2 Look back/Lockout with Payment delay SGEN Generation

Table 3.82: Look back/Lockout with Payment delay

Details	Values
Year Basis	360
Principal	\$100,000,000.00

Details	Values
Value Date	Mon, 03-Jun-19
Maturity Date	Tue, 18-Jun-19
Look back	5
Payment Delay Days	2
Currency	USD
Sgen	2-Working days
Modules Applicable	SR

Rate published(T - 4)	Rate For (T - 5)	Contract Calculation Date (System Date - T)	SOFR	No. days	Notional Principal	Interest
28-May-19	27-May-19	03-Jun-19	0.08	1	\$100,000.00	\$0.22
29-May-19	28-May-19	04-Jun-19	0.081	1		\$0.23
30-May-19	29-May-19	05-Jun-19	0.069	1		\$0.19
31-May-19	30-May-19	06-Jun-19	0.077	1		\$0.21
03-Jun-19	31-May-19	07-Jun-19	0.081	3		\$0.68
04-Jun-19	03-Jun-19	10-Jun-19	0.07	1		\$0.19
05-Jun-19	04-Jun-19	11-Jun-19	0.069	1		\$0.19
06-Jun-19	05-Jun-19	12-Jun-19	0.069	1		\$0.19
07-Jun-19	06-Jun-19	13-Jun-19	0.065	1		\$0.18
10-Jun-19	07-Jun-19	14-Jun-19	0.066	3		\$0.55
11-Jun-19	10-Jun-19	17-Jun-19	0.071	1		\$0.20
		18-Jun-19			SGEN (Payment Message)	Enteragrate
		19-Jun-19				
		20-Jun-19			\$100,000.00	
Total Amount						\$3.03

3.25.15 Contract Level Message Generation

You need to perform the following for contract level message generation:

- Book a Repo Deal with Customer Type as **Corporate** and Settlement Account Type as **Normal** and then the system generates the MT 900 Debit advice to the INIT event.
- Book a Reverse Repo Deal with Customer Type as **Corporate** and Settlement Account Type as **Normal** and then the system generates the MT 910 Credit advice to the INIT event.
- SGEN Payment message is applicable for both Online and EOD processing as per the currency settlement days maintained at the screen.
- SGEN for Payment message that is MT202/MT210/MT103 MT202 COV remains the same. The Payment message is generated only when the settlement account type is Nostro and Customer Type is Bank.
- Book a Future value date Repo deal where the Customer Type is **Corporate** and Settlement Account type is **Normal**, BOOK event is fired. When system reaches the value date on EOD processing the INIT event is fired with MT900 Debit advice message generation. As CUST_PMT_ADV is mapped at product level for INIT event, system resolves the debit or credit advice internally and generates the message accordingly.
- Book a Future value date Repo deal where the Customer Type is Bank and Settlement Account type is Nostro and then the BOOK and SGEN event will be triggered. MT210 Receiver Notice is generated as part of SGEN event when PAYMENT_MESSAGE is mapped at the product level.
- If PAYMENT_MESSAGE is not mapped to SGEN event at product level, then the system will not trigger any SWIFT message to the SGEN event.
- 'CUST_PMT_ADV' is supported for VAMI also. Perform Value dated amendment in **SRDXVMD** screen, check the VAMI event is triggered with MT900 or MT910 message. Future dated Amendment is also supported, the MT 900 or MT 910 message will be generated when the event occurs on EOD processing.
- Perform Rollover to the Repo or Reverse Repo Deal, check the MT900/MT910 message is generated as part of ROLL event if the customer type is Corporate and settlement account type is Normal. Future Rollover is also supported where the debit and credit advice is generated when the ROLL event occurs on EOD processing.
- Perform manual liquidation to the SR Repo or Reverse Repo Deal, MT910 message is generated to the LIQD event and MT 900 for Reverse Repo deal. The MT900/MT910 is generated to the LIQD event when CUST_PMT_ADV is mapped to the product of Repo and Reverse Repo.
- The system supports auto liquidation and the MT 900 and MT 910 message will be generated when the LIQD event occurs on EOD processing.

You need to maintain the following details for the contract level message generation:

- Treasury message type for SR module and message type 'CUST_PMT_ADV' using the 'Treasury Message Type Maintenance' screen.

- Maintain new advice 'CUST_PMT_ADV' for INIT, LIQD, ROLL, VAMI event using the 'Security Repo Product Definition' screen.
- The system displays an appropriate error message if CUST_PMT_ADV is maintained to SGEN event.
- When CUST_PMT_ADV advice is maintained at specific events, the system will restrict you to maintain CREDIT_ADVICE DEBIT_ADVICE and displays an appropriate error message.
- Both PAYMENT_MESSAGE and CUST_PMT_ADV can be mapped to same event. The system generates the messages at contract level based on the product.

List of Glossaries - Overview of Repo

SRDPRMNT

Securities Repo product Definition - [3.3.1 Securities Repo Product attributes](#) (p. 10)

SRDTRONL

Securities Repo Contract Online - [3.5 Capture Details of Repo Contract](#) (p. 56)

SRSTRONL

Securities Instrument Definition Summary - [3.10 Summary Details of Repo Contract](#) (p. 129)

SRDMRTRQ

Margin Transaction Query - [3.15 Margin Transaction Query](#) (p. 144)

SRDMRONL

Securities Repo Margin Processing [3.12 Securities Margin Process](#) (p. 135)

SRSRONL

Securities Repo Margin Processing summary - [3.13 Securities Repo Margin Processing Summary](#) (p. 141)

SRDXVMND

Security Repo VAMI - [3.18 Security Repo VAMI](#) (p. 156)

MGDCPROD

Margin Product Maintenance - [3.11 Margin Product for a REPO](#) (p. 131)

TRDMRTFX

Treasury Manual Rate Fixing - [3.16.7.1 Treasury Manual Rate Fixing Maintenance](#) (p. 150)

TRSMRTFX

Treasury Manual Rate Fixing Summary - [Treasury Manual Rate Fixing Summary](#)

SRDPAMIN

Securities Repo Payment Input - [3.20 Securities Repo Payment Input](#) (p. 171)

4. Risk Free Rates

This topic contains the following subtopics:

- 1) [Introduction](#)
- 2) [Define Rate codes for Risk Free rates](#)
- 3) [Risk Free Rates](#)
- 4) [Treasury Interest Class Definition](#)
- 5) [Securities Repo Product](#)
- 6) [Securities Repo Contract](#)
- 7) [Securities Repo Value Dated changes](#)
- 8) [Security Repo Manual Payments](#)
- 9) [Lifecycle process Impact](#)

4.1 Introduction

Provision to consume Risk Free Rates (RFR) or any other index rate daily from a published source is provided. The system integrates product processor with centralized interest calculation engine. The Product Processor sends appropriate parameters to the Interest Calculation Engine per deal and receives the interest rate and computed interest amount.

RFR supports interest rate calculation on both simple average method and the compounding method, where the accrued interest is added to the principal. The system maintains the daily interest amount and daily rate for each contract.

RFR also supports interest rate calculation by using weighted average method (WAC).

NOTE: Only simple interest calculation can be done by WAC.

RFR does not support negative interest rate calculations.

The required accruals are posted on currency working days only and are reconciled for payouts at the end of the interest period.

RFR supports both the back and future value date bookings with proper interest application.

The SR module supports the below RFR methods.

In Arrear Method for bearing type of products include the below types:

- Lookback
- Lockout
- Payment Delay
- Plain
- Interest Rollover

In addition to the above, the SR module supports the below RFR combination methods:

- Lookback and Lockout combination
- Lookback and Payment Delay
- Lockout and Payment Delay

-
- Lookback, Lockout, and Payment delay combination

In Advance method supported for discounted and true discounted products include the below types:

- Last reset
- Last recent

The WAC method supports the Arrear method and RFR combination method.

The arrear method supports the following bearing products:

- Lookback
- Lockout
- Payment Delay
- Plain

The below RFR combination methods are supported in the WAC method:

- Lookback and Lockout
- Lookback and Payment Delay
- Lockout and Payment Delay
- Lookback, Lockout, and Payment Delay

For more information on RFR calculation method for each type, refer to the [RFR Calculation Method](#).

4.2 Define Rate codes for Risk Free rates

This topic provides the instructions to define the rate codes for risk free rates.

CONTEXT:

RFR codes is maintained at the Rate Code Definition screen.

1. On the Homepage, type **CFDFRTCD** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

STEP RESULT: **Rate Code Definition** screen is displayed.

Figure 4.1: Rate Code Definition

Rate Code Definition

New Enter Query

Rate Code *

Description

Maker
Checker

Date Time:
Date Time:

Mod No

Record Status
Authorization Status

Exit

4.3 Risk Free Rates

This topic provides the instructions to capture the Risk Free Rates.

CONTEXT:

Selected Overnight Risk Free rates is maintained in this screen.

1. On the Homepage, type **CFDRFRRT** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

STEP RESULT: **RFR Rate Input** screen is displayed.

Figure 4.2: RFR Rate Input

RFR Rate Input

New Enter Query

Rate Code *
Rate Description

Type ☒ Rate ☐ Index Value

Currency Details

1 Of 1 Go

Currency Code *	Currency Name
-----------------	---------------

Rate Details

1 Of 1 Go

Rate Received Date *	Effective Date *	Rate / Index Value *	Rate Applicable Days	1st Percentile	25th Percentile	75th P
----------------------	------------------	----------------------	----------------------	----------------	-----------------	--------

Fields

Maker	Date Time:	Mod No	Record Status
Checker	Date Time:		Authorization Status

Exit

- On the RFR Rate Input screen, specify the details as required.
For information on fields refer to:

Table 4.1: RFR Rate Input - Field Description

Field	Description
Rate Code	Identifies the Risk Free Reference Rate Code
Rate Description	Defines the RFR rate code
Type	Choose the type of Maintenance: - Rate - Index
Currency Code	Identifies the currency mapped to RFR code
Rate Received Date	The date on which our system received the RFR rate
Effective date	Applicable RFR effective date
Interest rate	RFR on the respective effective date

Field	Description
Rate Applicable days	Number of days the RFR is applicable for
Percentile	Percentile of RFR defined as 1st, 25th,75th and 99th
Volume in Billions	Identifies the RFR volume in count of billions

4.4 Treasury Interest Class Definition

This topic provides the instructions to capture the Treasury Interest Class Definition details.

CONTEXT:

Treasury Interest Class Definition supports RFR methods and computation preferences.

1. On the Homepage, type **CFDTRINC** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

STEP RESULT: **Treasury Interest Class Definition** screen is displayed.

Figure 4.3: Treasury Interest Class Definition

Treasury Interest Class Definition

New Enter Query

Class Code * _____
 Rule _____
 Module * _____
 Event _____

Class Description _____
 Rule Description _____
 Event Description _____

Basis

Amount Type _____
 Settlement Currency _____
 Category _____
☒ Accruals
☐ Bulk Amount
☒ Allow Amendment
☐ Stop Application

Grace Period _____
 Pre Payment Method _____
☐ Main Component
☐ Link Contract as Rate Code
☐ Propagation Required
☐ Consider as Discount
☐ Negative Interest Allowed

Negative Class Code _____

Alternative Risk-Free Rate Preferences

☐ Lookback
☐ Payment Delay
☐ Lockout
☐ Interest Rollover
☐ Last Reset
☐ Last Recent
☐ Plain
☐ Index Value
☐ Rate Compounding
☐ Observation Shift
☐ Weighted Average

Payment Movement Calendar _____
 Calendar _____

Lookback Days _____
 Payment Delay Days _____
 Lockout Days _____
 Computation Calendar _____
 Financial Center _____
 Base Computation Method _____
 Spread/Margin Computation Method _____
 Spread Adj Computation Method _____
 Rate Compounding Method _____
 RFR Rounding Unit _____

RFR Rounding Unit _____

Interest

Rate Type _____
 Rate Code _____
 Code Usage _____
 Reset Tenor _____

Borrow Lend Indicator _____
 Rate Calculation Type _____
 Margin Application _____
 Margin Basis _____

Pricing Details

☐ External Pricing

Limits

1 Of 1 Go

☐	Currency	Rate Fixing Days	Fixing Date Movement	Default Rate	Minimum Rate	Maximum Rate	Default Spread	Minimum Spre

Maker _____ Date Time: _____ Mod No _____ Record Status _____
 Checker _____ Date Time: _____ Authorization Status _____

Exit

- On the Treasury Interest Class Definition screen, specify the details as required.
 For information on fields refer to: [Table 4.2: Treasury Interest Class Definition - Field Description](#)

Table 4.2: Treasury Interest Class Definition - Field Description

Field	Description
Alternative Risk Free Rate	Identifies if the interest class is enabled for RFR
Rate Revision Preferences	Select any one of the RFR calculation method check box from the below options: • Lookback • Payment Delay • Lockout • Interest Rollover • Last Reset • Last Recent • Plain • Weighted Average The user can also select the combination of the below calculation method check box: • Lookback and Lockout • Lookback and Payment Delay • Lockout and Payment Delay • Lookback, Lockout, and Payment Delay
Lookback	The user can select Lookback as RFR preference if the Rate Method is In-Arrears. The observation period for the interest rate calculation starts and ends a certain number of days prior to the Interest period. As a result, you can choose the interest payment to be calculated prior to the end of the interest period.
Look Back Days	This field will only be relevant if 'Rate Method' is 'In-Arrears' or bearing and RFR method is Lookback.
Lockout	The user can select Lockout as RFR preference if the Rate Method is In-Arrears. Lockout means that the RFR is frozen for a certain number of days prior to the end of an interest period (lockout period). During this time, the RFR of lockout period days is applied for the remaining days of the interest period. As a result, the averaged RFR can be calculated a couple of days before the end of the Interest period.
Lockout Days	This field will only be relevant if 'Rate Method' is 'In-Arrears' or bearing and RFR method is Lockout.
Payment Delay	The user can select Payment Delay as RFR preference if the Rate Method is In-Arrears. In this method, Interest payments are delayed by a certain number of days and are due a few days after the end of an interest period.

Field	Description
Payment Delay Days	This field will only be relevant if 'Rate Method' is 'In-Arrears' or bearing and RFR method is Payment delay. Number of days by which the interest (or installment) payments are delayed by a certain number of days and are thus due a few days after the end of an interest period.
Interest Rollover	Check this box to indicate that interest rollover is allowed. Interest Rollover method can be used as a combined method along with one each of In-arrears & In-advance methods. Payments are set in advance and any missed interest relative to in arrears is rolled over into the next payment period. This option combines a first payment (installment payment) known at the beginning of the interest period with an adjustment payment known at the end. The adjustment payment can be made a few days later or at the end of the next accrual period. Interest rollover with negative interest rate is allowed for In-arrear method.
Plain	This field will only be relevant if Rate Method is In-Arrears or bearing and RFR method is Plain. System uses averaged RFR over current interest period, paid on first day of next interest period.
Last Reset	This field will only be relevant if 'Rate Method' is 'In-Advance' and 'Rate Convention' is Last reset. In this option, interest payments are determined on the basis of the averaged RFR of the previous period.
Last Recent	This field will only be relevant if 'Rate Method' is 'In-Advance' and 'Rate Convention' is Last recent. In this option, a single RFR or an averaged RFR for a short number of days, are applied for the entire interest period
Compounding Preferences	
Computation Calendar	Select the Computation Calendar from the drop-down list, when RFR is selected for interest calculation. The available options are: • Currency • Financial Calendar
Financial Center	This field is mandatory if the financial center is selected as a computation calendar. Select the code of the financial center from the displayed list of values.
Base Computation Method	It is either simple or compounded
Spread\ Margin Computation Method	Spread\ Margin computation method can be maintained as either Simple or compounded.
Spread Adjustment Method	Spread adjustment method is either as either Simple or compounded

Field	Description
Rate Compounding	User can select the rate compounding to be applied for each calculation period. When enabled, system opts for rate compounding instead of amount compounding, the amount difference comes into effect only if any pre-payment is done. For more information on RFR Rate Compounding, refer to the RFR Rate Compounding calculation worksheet.
Rate Compounding Method	Select the Rate Compounding Method from the drop-down list. The available options are: • CCR • NCCR This Rate Compounding method produces a rate for a period by applying the RFR compounding formula to the RFR rate and applying the compounded rate to the principal to calculate the interest due. Currently it's applicable for MM & SR modules. Rate Compounding supports two methods: 1. Cumulative Compounded Rate (CCR) Calculates the compounded rate at the end of the interest period and it is applied to the whole period. It allows calculation of interest for the whole period using a single compounded rate. 2. Non-Cumulative Compounded Rate (NCCR) It is derived from Cumulative Compounded Rate i.e., Cumulative rate as of current day minus Cumulative rate as of prior Banking day. This generates a daily compounded rate which allows the calculation of a daily interest amount. Rate Compounding supports below RFR preferences: Arrear Method • Lookback • Lockout • Payment Delay • Plain

Field	Description
Index Value	Select the Index Value check box to use the RFR index rate. The RFR Index measures the cumulative impact of compounding RFR on a unit of investment over time. Index Value supports below RFR preferences: Arrear Method • Lookback • Lockout • Payment Delay • Plain Advance Method • Last Reset • Last Recent • Last Recent For more information on RFR Index Value, refer to the RFR Index Value calculation worksheet.
Observation Shift	Select the Observation Shift check box to apply observation Shift to RFR calculation. The observation shift mechanism provides the rate to be calculated and weighted by reference to the Observation Period rather than the relevant interest period. Observation Shift Currently supports below RFR Methods and combination. • Lookback • Lockout • Lookback and Lockout combination For more information on RFR Observation Shift, refer to the RFR Observation Shift calculation worksheet.

Field	Description
Weighted Average	Select this check box to use weighted average calculation (WAC) as the RFR calculation method. The WAC here represent the simple average calculation and not compounded. The averaged RFR in this convention is the simple arithmetic mean of the daily RFRs. OBTR supports WAC to calculate base rate (BR), Credit Adjustment Spread (CAS), and Customer Margin. The WAC formula to calculate simple interest is: $AvgRate = \left[\sum_{i=1}^{d_b} \left(\frac{r_i \times n_i}{N} \right) \right] \times \frac{N}{d_c}$ $InterestAmt = Principal \times AvgRate \times \frac{d_c}{N}$ Here, db: the number of business days for the interest calculation period dc: the number of calendar days for the interest calculation period ri: reference rate for the day number i within the interest calculation period ni: the number of calendar days for which rate ri applied (on most days, ni will be 1, but on a Friday it will generally be 3, and it will also be larger than 1 on the business day before a holiday) N: the number of calendar days in one year (360 to 365) For more information, refer to the RFR WAC sheet.
Payment Calendar Movement	Select the payment movement calendar. The list displays the following values: • Calendar • Business If the option Calendar is selected, then the system skips the Holiday Preferences selected at the contract level. If the option Business is selected, it considers holiday treatment specified for schedule as per the Holiday Preferences selected at the contract level.
RFR Rounding Unit	Specify the Rounding Units value to round daily index value to the nearest whole number and use it for interest calculation. It is applicable only when RFR index value is used.

3. On the **Treasury Interest Class Definition** screen, specify the details as required.

The following steps are followed:

- Rate code Field will fetch all the rate codes maintained at CFDFLTRI (floating rate code) and CFDRFRRT (RFR codes).
- If the RFR flag is checked, the rate code selected is maintained in CFDRFRRT(RFR codes) screen. Selecting the rate code is mandatory when RFR flag is checked.
- If the RFR flag is unchecked, select a rate code maintained in CFDFLTRI (floating rate code).

- Under limits multi-block, the system allows the saving of record for RFR mapped rate code currency only. Example for RFR code: RFR, only USD currency record is permitted. If in case any other currency is maintained, the system validates accordingly throws an error.
- For an RFR rate code currency, entering min and max rate is allowed.
- There are no restrictions on the interest basis selection for RFR rate codes.
- RFR usage is allowed only for the Main Interest component.
- The system allows multiple Interest class records for same RFR code and currency but with different preferences.
- After the Interest class maintenance is saved and authorized, the system allows the user to unlock the RFR details and modify it based on the requirement.

4.5 Securities Repo Product

This topic provides the instructions to capture the RFR details in Security Repo Product.

CONTEXT:

The **Securities Repo Product** screen, Interest call form is enhanced to have similar new fields introduced in **Treasury Interest Class Definition (CFDTRINC)** screen.

PREREQUISITE:

Login to the homepage and navigate to the **Securities Repo Product** screen.

1. On the **Securities Repo Product** Screen, click **Interest**.

STEP RESULT: **ICCF details** screen is displayed.

Figure 4.4: ICCF details

The screenshot displays the 'ICCF Details' window, which is organized into several sections for configuring interest class and risk-free rate parameters.

- Product Information:** Includes fields for Product Code and Product Description.
- Basis:** Contains settings for Amount Type, Pre Payment Method (set to FLEXCUBE), and Collection Type (radio buttons for Advance and Arrear).
- Alternative Risk-Free Rate Preferences:** A section with a list of checkboxes on the left (Lookback, Payment Delay, Lockout, Interest Rollover, Last Reset, Last Recent, Plain, Index Value, Rate Compounding, Observation Shift, Weighted Average) and corresponding input fields on the right (Lookback Days, Payment Delay Days, Lockout Days, Computation Calendar, Financial Center, Base Computation Method, Spread/Margin Computation Method, Spread Adj Computation Method, Rate Compounding Method, RFR Rounding Unit).
- Interest:** Includes Rate Type (Fixed), Rate Code, Borrow Lend Indicator (Borrow), Rate Cycle Type (Up), Event, Rule, and Component (marked with a red asterisk). It also has fields for Code Usage (Auto), Reset Tenor, Margin Basis (Facility), Margin Application (Periodic), Event Description, Rule Description, and Description (with a 'Default From Class' button).
- Pricing Details:** Includes a checkbox for External Pricing.
- Product Limits:** A table at the bottom with columns: Currency, Default Rate, Minimum Rate, Maximum Rate, Default Spread, Minimum Spread, and a final column with a 'V' icon. The table currently shows one row for 'Currency *'.

Navigation buttons 'Ok' and 'Exit' are located at the bottom right of the window.

- On the ICCF details, specify the details as required.

During the creation and unlock after the authorization, user can change RFR preferences after they are defaulted from interest class.

During check and uncheck of RFR flag, the respective Rate code mapping is done.

System allows mapping of only one RFR interest class as the main component.

NOTE: Once contract is saved and authorized, the RFR preferences cannot be changed.

4.6 Securities Repo Contract

This topic provides the instructions to capture the RFR details in Security Repo Contract.

CONTEXT:

Interest call form of the **Security Repo Contract** screen is enhanced to have similar new fields introduced in **Treasury Interest Class Definition (CFDTRINC)** screen.

PREREQUISITE:

Login to the homepage and navigate to the **Security Repo Contract** screen.

1. On the **Security Repo Contract** Screen, click **Interest**.

STEP RESULT: **Treasury Interest Class Definition** screen is displayed.

Figure 4.5: Treasury Interest Class Definition

The screenshot displays the 'Treasury Interest Class Definition' window with the following sections and fields:

- Class Code ***: Input field.
- Rule**: Input field.
- Module ***: Input field.
- Event**: Input field.
- Class Description**: Input field.
- Rule Description**: Input field.
- Event Description**: Input field.
- Basis**:
 - Amount Type**: Input field.
 - Settlement Currency**: Input field.
 - Category**: Dropdown menu.
 - ☒ Accruals
 - ☐ Bulk Amount
 - ☒ Allow Amendment
 - ☐ Stop Application
- Grace Period**: Input field.
- Pre Payment Method**: Dropdown menu.
- ☐ Main Component
- ☐ Link Contract as Rate Code
- ☐ Propagation Required
- ☐ Consider as Discount
- ☐ Negative Interest Allowed
- Negative Class Code**: Input field.
- Alternative Risk-Free Rate Preferences**:
 - ☐ Lookback
 - ☐ Payment Delay
 - ☐ Lockout
 - ☐ Interest Rollover
 - ☐ Last Reset
 - ☐ Last Recent
 - ☐ Plain
 - ☐ Index Value
 - ☐ Rate Compounding
 - ☐ Observation Shift
 - ☐ Weighted Average
 - Payment Movement Calendar**: Calendar dropdown.
 - Lookback Days**: Input field.
 - Payment Delay Days**: Input field.
 - Lockout Days**: Input field.
 - Computation Calendar**: Currency dropdown.
 - Financial Center**: Input field.
 - Base Computation Method**: Dropdown menu.
 - Spread/Margin Computation Method**: Dropdown menu.
 - Spread Adj Computation Method**: Dropdown menu.
 - Rate Compounding Method**: Dropdown menu.
 - RFR Rounding Unit**: Input field.
- Interest**:
 - Rate Type**: Dropdown menu.
 - Rate Code**: Input field.
 - Code Usage**: Dropdown menu.
 - Reset Tenor**: Input field.
 - Borrow Lend Indicator**: Dropdown menu.
 - Rate Calculation Type**: Dropdown menu.
 - Margin Application**: None dropdown.
 - Margin Basis**: Dropdown menu.
- Pricing Details**:
 - ☐ External Pricing
- Limits**:
 - Navigation: 1 Of 1, Go button.
 - Table headers: Currency, Rate Fixing Days, Fixing Date Movement, Default Rate, Minimum Rate, Maximum Rate, Default Spread, Minimum Spread.
- Footer**:
 - Maker**: Input field.
 - Checker**: Input field.
 - Date Time:**: Input field.
 - Mod No**: Input field.
 - Record Status**: Input field.
 - Authorization Status**: Input field.
 - Exit**: Button.

2. On the **ICCF details**, specify the details as required.
 During the contract creation, user can change RFR preferences after they are defaulted from product level.
 When the user check or uncheck the RFR flag, map the respective rate code mapping.
 Existing customer margin field is used for RFR spread/margin value.
 Spread Adjustment field is enabled and used only for RFR component. Existing spread field is disabled and nullified for RFR component.
 The system allows mapping of only one RFR interest class as the main component for a contract. The system uses the Existing Rate Fixing Days field as lookback days for RFR Advance methods.
NOTE: Once contract is saved and authorized, the RFR preferences cannot be changed.
3. On the **Securities Repo Contract Online** screen, navigate to the **Schedules** tab and click **Explode**.
 Interest rate details are added to schedules explode to display details of interest calculated by system.
STEP RESULT: **Payment Schedule Details** screen is displayed.

Figure 4.6: Payment Schedule Details

The screenshot displays the 'Payment Schedule Details' window, which is organized into four main sections, each with a table and a 'Go' button. The 'Exit' button is located at the bottom right of the window.

- Schedule Summary:** Contains a table with columns: Due date, Pay Receive, Currency, Total amount Due, Total Amount Settled, Total Amount Adjusted, Subsidy Amount, and Settlement Date.
- Schedule Details:** Contains a table with columns: Component, Pay Receive, Amount Due, Amount Settled, Adjusted Amount, Subsidy Amount, and Back Value Adjustment Amount.
- Interest Rate Details:** Contains a table with columns: Calculation Date, Rate Type, Rate Code, Principal Basis, Base Rate, Weighted Average Rate, Base Index Rate, and Spread / Margin.
- Amount Settled:** Contains a table with columns: Input Date, Value Date, Amount Settled, and LCY Equivalent Settled.

Each section also includes a 'Schedule Dates' section at the bottom of the table area.

4. Refer to the provided payment schedule breakup.
 The following details are available:

Table 4.3: Schedule Breakup

Field	Description
Interest Rate Details	• Calculation Date • Rate Type • Rate Code • Principal Basis • Base Rate • Base Index Rate • Weighted Average Rate • Spread/Margin • Spread Adjustment • No. of Days • Compound Interest • Simple Interest • Total Interest • Cumulative Interest • Rate Pickup Date

5. Effective interest rate is displayed as per the below calculation as an example. Consider a contract with Look-back RFR calculation method with below details:

- Trade date= 04 March 2020
- Value date= 04 March 2020
- Maturity date= 16 March 2020
- System date= 16 March 2020
- Principal= USD 95000
- Lookback days= 1
- Customer margin=0
- Spread adjustment= 0
- Base amount calc method= Lookback compounded
- Interest basis= Actual/Actual

Below is the calculation for accruals (based on RFR rates taken as an example)

Calendar Date	Effective Date	Rate	Principal	Accrual
4-Mar	3-Mar	1.01%	95000	2.621585
5-Mar	4-Mar	1.02%	95002.62	2.647614
6-Mar	5-Mar	1.03%	95005.27	8.020937
9-Mar	7-Mar	1.04%	95013.29	2.699831
10-Mar	9-Mar	1.05%	95015.99	2.725869
11-Mar	10-Mar	1.06%	95018.72	2.751908
12-Mar	11-Mar	1.07%	95021.47	2.77795
13-Mar	12-Mar	1.08%	95024.25	8.411982
16-Mar	14-Mar	1.09%	95032.66	2.877378

Taking the final accrual as 32.63 USD with a simple interest calculation method for nominal of USD 95000 for a period from 04 March to 16 March 2020, the effective rate is calculated to be:

Effective rate= $1 + (32.63 \times 365) / (95000 \times 13) = 1.00938947$

6. To ensure that the rates are within the stipulated limits, the Security Repo module supports Minimum and Maximum Rate pick up for RFR enabled contracts.
If the derived RFR rate for a contract considering the base rate and spread adjustment is less than the minimum rate, the minimum rate maintained is applied on the contract.
If the derived RFR rate for a contract considering the base rate and spread adjustment is greater than the maximum rate, the maximum rate is applied on the contract overriding the RFR rates.
7. The SR module supports booking of Repo and Reverse Repo deals having RFR preference enabled Security instruments.

4.7 Securities Repo Value Dated changes

This topic provides the instructions to capture the RFR details in Securities Repo Value dated changes.

CONTEXT:

The Securities Repo Value Amendment screen, Interest call form is enhanced to have similar new fields introduced in **Treasury Interest Class Definition (CFDTRINC)** screen.

1. On the **Securities Repo Value Amendment** Screen, click **Interest**.
STEP RESULT: **ICCF** screen is displayed.
2. On the **ICCF** screen, below fields are editable during VAMI
 - Customer Margin
 - Spread Adjustment

No change is allowed for a RFR contract with payment delay method in between the schedule actual due date and the payment date calculated after adding payment delay days.

4.8 Security Repo Manual Payments

This topic provides the instructions to capture the Security Repo Manual Payments with risk free rates.

1. On the Homepage, enter **SRDPAMIN** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

STEP RESULT: The **Security Repo Payment Input** screen is displayed.

Figure 4.7: Securities Repo Payment Input

You can perform the following operation in the **Security Repo Payment Input** screen for manual payments:

- a) Click the **Populate** button, system does amount due recalculation for RFR components based on latest rate available in system. For more information, refer to the [RFR Recalculation Sheet](#).

For RFR contract on payment delay method, no penalty is charged for payment after actual due date and within payment delay days.

4.9 Lifecycle process Impact

4.9.1 Swift Messaging

MT320 SWIFT message generated during BOOK, LIQD & ROLL events, must have proper field values for below tags for SR contracts with RFR component:

- 32H Amount to be Settled
- 34E Currency and Interest Amount
- 37G Interest Rate

MT350 SWIFT message generated during interest payouts must have proper field values for below tags for SR contracts with RFR component:

- 34B Currency and Interest Amount
- 37J Interest Rate

4.9.2 Contract Advices

Confirmation and rollover advices maintained for SR module must have proper interest rate and amount for SR contracts with RFR component.

4.9.3 Intraday Deals

Booking and liquidation of SR intraday deals is supported for the SR contracts with the RFR component.

4.9.4 Back dated and Future dated Contract Booking

RFR contracts supports both back and future dated booking.

In case of future dated contract, the deal is uninitiated on BOOK date, and the same is processed on the value date during EOD.

When the deal is initiated, the system derives the interest rate and amount.

4.9.5 Liquidate back date schedules

When the user book a Back dated SR contract having the check for Liquidate backdated schedules and if there is back dated interim payment schedule, interest amount for the schedule is derived and settled on save.

4.9.6 Interest Accrual

Interest is calculated and accrued based on the selected computation methods.

Any accrual based on negative interest rate/ negative amount is done at negative component level. Main interest component continues to support positive interest rate/ positive amount based accrual.

Any accrual based on negative interest rate/ negative amount is done at negative component level. Main interest component continues to support positive interest rate/ positive amount based accrual.

4.9.7 Interest Schedules

Interest schedules are displayed against both main interest component and negative interest component separately.

Schedule amount for negative component are shown in absolute value with appropriate Pay or Receive indicators showing whether the amount is to be paid or received by bank

4.9.8 Interest Liquidation

During interest liquidation, cumulative accrued interest amount is paid. RFR supports both Manual and Auto Liquidation of schedules.

4.9.9 Back dated and future dated Value dated amendments

SR Contract with the RFR component supports the Back Dated and Value Dated amendments and respective adjustments are posted.

4.9.10 Prepayments and withdrawals

In case of partial payments, interest calculation considers the outstanding principal amount.

4.9.11 Roll Over

When roll preference is set as the principal only, cumulative interest accrued is liquidated on value date of contract. Else, both principal and interest are rolled over to child contract.

Rate pickup of child contract must happen based on the value date and other RFR preferences selected.

4.9.12 Liquidation Delay

The system supports the delay in liquidating the contract till all the RFR rates are available. Liquidation will happen once the rate is received on the maturity date during EOD batch processing.

Note: This functionality is applicable to RFR related contracts only (Plain Method).

4.10 List of Glossary - RFR

CFDFRTCD

Rate Code Definition - [4.2 Define Rate codes for Risk Free rates](#) (p. 206)

CFDRFRRT

RFR Rate Input - [4.3 Risk Free Rates](#) (p. 207)

CFDTRINC

Treasury Interest Class Definition - [4.4 Treasury Interest Class Definition](#) (p. 209)

CFDTRINC

Treasury Interest Class Definition - [4.4 Treasury Interest Class Definition](#) (p. 209)

SRDPAMIN

Securities Repo Payment Input - [4.7.1 Securities Repo Payment Input](#) (p. 221)

5. Securities Financial Transaction Regulation

This topic contains the following subtopics:

- 1) [Introduction](#)
- 2) [Static Type Maintenance](#)
- 3) [Treasury Customer Additional Maintenance](#)
- 4) [Securities Instrument Definition](#)
- 5) [Securities Repo Contract Online](#)
- 6) [List of Glossary - SFTR](#)

5.1 Introduction

Due to a lack of data, regulators and supervisors had difficulty anticipating the risks in the securities financing transactions (SFT) during the financial crisis and thereafter.

In 2015, the European Union (EU) adopted the securities financing transactions regulation (SFTR) to increase the transparency of SFTs. SFTR covers three key requirements:

- **Transaction reporting:** Financial and non-financial counterparties must report their SFTs to central databases known as trade repositories.
- **Disclosure obligation:** Information on the use of SFTs is disclosed to investors in the regular reports and pre-investments documents issued by the funds.
- **Collateral reuse obligation:** Transparency on the reuse of collateral is required, such as disclosure of risks and the obligation to acquire prior consent.

5.2 Static Type Maintenance

CONTEXT:

This topic provides the instruction to maintain static types which are used to parameterize the SFTR reporting.

NOTE: All fields marked with an asterisk (*) are mandatory.

1. On the Home page, enter **CODTRTYP** in the text field and then click the next arrow.

STEP RESULT: **Treasury Static Type Maintenance** screen is displayed.

Figure 5.1: Treasury Static Type Maintenance

Treasury Static Type Maintenance

New Enter Query

Type *

Type Name *

Type Value

Fields

Maker	Date Time:	Mod No	Record Status
Checker	Date Time:		Authorization Status

Exit

- On the **Treasury Static Type Maintenance** screen, specify the details, and click **Save** to record the new maintenance.

[Table 5.1: Static Maintenance Types](#) describes the static maintenance types.

Table 5.1: Static Maintenance Types

Type	Description
SECTOR	Sector of a counterparty
ADD SECTOR	Additional sector of counterparty
TR VENUE	Trading venue
AG TYPE	Master agreement type
COLL METHOD	Collateral transfer method
COLL TYPE	Collateral type

For more information on the fields and combination of parameters to use in **Treasury Static Type Maintenance** screen, refer to [Table 5.2: Field- Parameters Combination](#). We recommend you use the parameter combination as shown in the below table.

Table 5.2: Field- Parameters Combination

Type	Type Name	Type Value
SECTOR	REIN	Reinsurance Undertaking
	CSDS	Central Securities Depository
	UCIT	UCITSS
ADD SECTOR	ETFT	ETF
	MMFT	MMF
	REIT	REIT
	OTHER	OTHERS
TR VENUE	XOFF	MIC-Admitted
	XXXX	MIC-Unadmitted
AG TYPE	GMRA	GMRA
	CARA	Investment Industry
	CNBR	China Bond Repo
	OTHR	Others
COLL METHOD	TTCA	Title transfer
	SICA	Securities financial collateral arrangement
	SIUR	Securities financial collateral arrangement with right of use
COLL TYPE	GOVS	Government Securities
	FIDE	Debt Securities
	SEPR	Securitized Products

5.3 Treasury Customer Additional Maintenance

CONTEXT:

This topic provides the instruction to maintain **ESMA Details** and to capture the Legal Entity Identifier (LEI) code of the customer.

NOTE: All fields marked with an asterisk (*) are mandatory.

1. On the Home page, enter **STDTRCIF** in the text field, and then click the next arrow.

STEP RESULT: **Treasury Customer Additional Maintenance** screen is displayed.

Figure 5.2: Treasury Customer Additional Maintenance

Treasury Customer Additional Details Maintenance

New Enter Query

Customer No *
Customer Name
Customer Category *

Front Office Short Name
Front Office Long Name

Relationship Pricing

CLS Participant

Credit Check Parameters

Credit Check Required

Multiple Swift Confirmation Parameters

Fund Type Customer

Custodian BIC Code
Settlement Member BIC Code

Generate Confirmation Message to

Custodian Only
Settlement Member Only
Both Custodian and Settlement Member

CLS Restrictions | Change Log

Maker
Checker

Date Time:
Date Time:

Mod No

Record Status
Authorization Status

Exit

- On the **Treasury Customer Additional Details Maintenance** screen, click the **ESMA Details** tab and specify the details.

STEP RESULT: The **ESMA Details** page is displayed.

Figure 5.3: Treasury Customer Additional Details Maintenance - ESMA Details

Treasury Customer Additional Details Maintenance

New Enter Query

Customer No *
Customer Name
Customer Category *

Front Office Short Name
Front Office Long Name

Relationship Pricing

CLS Participant

Credit Check Parameters

Credit Check Required

Multiple Swift Confirmation Parameters

Fund Type Customer

Custodian BIC Code
Settlement Member BIC Code

Generate Confirmation Message to

Custodian Only
Settlement Member Only
Both Custodian and Settlement Member

CLS Restrictions | Change Log

Maker
Checker

Date Time:
Date Time:

Mod No

Record Status
Authorization Status

Exit

For more information on the field description, refer to [Table 5.3: Treasury Customer Additional Details Maintenance - ESMA Details Tab - Field Description](#).

Table 5.3: Treasury Customer Additional Details Maintenance - ESMA Details Tab - Field Description

Type	Description
Sector	Click the search icon and select the unique code of the sector from the displayed list for identifying a counterparty.
Sector Description	A brief description of the selected sector of the counterparty is displayed.
Additional Sector	Click the search icon and select the unique code of the additional sector from the displayed list for identifying a counterparty. Indicates whether the reporting counterparty is an Undertaking for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities (UCITS) or Alternative Investment Fund (AIF).
Additional Sector Description	A brief description of the selected additional sector of the counterparty is displayed.
Nature of the Entity	Select the counterparty's Nature of the Entity from the drop-down list. The drop-down list shows the following options: - Financial - Non Financial
LEI Code	Specify the LEI code of the counterparty.

5.4 Securities Instrument Definition

CONTEXT: This topic provides the instruction to maintain SFTR reporting details in the **Securities Instrument Definition** screen.

The **Securities Instrument Definition** call form is enhanced with **Financial Instrument's Classification** field to maintain SFTR reporting details.

NOTE: All fields marked with an asterisk (*) are mandatory.

- On the Home page, enter **SEDTRONL** in the text field, and then click next arrow.

STEP RESULT: **Securities Instrument Definition** screen is displayed.

Figure 5.4: Securities Instrument Definition

- On the **Securities Instrument Definition** screen, specify the fields.

For more information on the field description, refer to “Process Security Deals Product Definition” in the *Securities User Guide*.

5.5 Securities Repo Contract Online

CONTEXT:

This topic provides the instruction to specify details for the **Securities Repo Contract Online** screen

NOTE: All fields marked with an asterisk (*) are mandatory.

- On the Home page, enter **SRDTRONL** in the text field, and then click the next arrow.

STEP RESULT: **Securities Repo Contract Online** screen is displayed.

Figure 5.5: Securities Repo Contract Online

- On the **Securities Repo Contract Online** screen, click the **ESMA Details** tab and specify the details.

STEP RESULT: The **ESMA Details** page is displayed.

Figure 6: Securities Repo Contract Online - ESMA Details

Securities Repo Contract Online

New Enter Query

Product Code *

Product Description

Source

Dealer

Broker

Deal Input Time

Reject Reason

Version Number ◀ Of ▶

Contract Reference Number *

User Reference Number

External Reference Number

Reversal reference Number

Outstanding Amount

Contract Schedules Rollover Preferences **ESMA Details**

Report submitting entity

Description

Entity responsible for the report

Description

Clearing member

Description

CSD participant code

Description

Agent lender

Description

Clearing TimeStamp

CCP

Description

Centrally cleared

Trading venue

Agreement type

Other agreement type

Master agreement version

Earliest call back date yyyy-MM-dd

General collateral indicator

Deliver by value

Collateral method

Collateral Description

Termination optionality

Collateralization of net exposure

Hair Cut %

Collateral quality

Collateral type

Availability for collateral reuse

Events | Brokerage | Effective Interest Rate | Accrual | Linked Entities | Change Log | Revision Details | Repo | Reverse Repo | Settlement | Split | Messages | Interest |

Input By

Date Time

Contract Status

Checker

Date Time

Authorization Status

Exit

For more information on the field description, refer to [Table 3.23: Securities Repo Contract Online - ESMA Details Tab - Field Description](#).

5.6 List of Glossary - SFTR

CODTRTYP

Static Type Maintenance - [5.2 Static Type Maintenance](#) (p. 224).

STDTRCIF

Treasury Customer Additional Details Maintenance - [5.3 Treasury Customer Additional Maintenance](#) (p. 226).

SEDTRONL

Security Instrument Definition - [5.4 Securities Instrument Definition](#) (p. 228).

SRDTRONL

Securities Repo Contract Online - [5.5 Securities Repo Contract Online](#) (p. 229).

6. Printing Subsidiary General Ledger Form- Repo and Reverse Repo Deals

This topic contains the following subtopics:

- 1) [Introduction](#)
- 2) [Process SGL Maintenance](#)

6.1 Introduction

At the time of defining a security, the user can specify a form type for the security. If the form is of type SGL, the system automatically generates a corresponding SGL advice. An SGL advice is generated for security, repo and reverse repo deals when the following events occur:

- On authorization of a securities deal
- On initiation of a repo deal
- On liquidation of a reverse repo deal

6.2 Process SGL Maintenance

This topic describes the systematic instruction to process SGL maintenance.

CONTEXT:

An SGL advice is printed on formatted stationery. Every SGL advice triggered by the system is tracked by a unique form number (serial number). The user can maintain the form numbers in the SGL Maintenance screen.

PREREQUISITE:

Specify **User Id** and **Password**, and login to Homescreeen.

1. On Homescreeen, specify **SEDXGLMT** in the text box, and click next arrow.

STEP RESULT: **SGL Maintenance** screen is displayed.

Figure 6.1: SGL Maintenance

SGL Maintenance

New Enter Query

Form Number *

Status N

Deal Reference

Trade Date

Transaction Date

Security Id

Fields

Maker	Date Time:	Mod No	Record Status
Checker	Date Time:		Authorization Status

Exit

2. On **SGL Maintenance** screen, specify the fields,
In this screen, the user can specify the form numbers either as a range or choose to enter the numbers manually.
Click on new icon in the tool bar to specify a new form number. At any point of time the status of a form number will either be:

- U (used)
- N (Not Used)
- Canceled

NOTE: By default, the status of a form number is 'N' (Not Used).

The form numbers will be available for use only after the user save and authorize the record.

Table 6.1: SGL maintenance

Field	Description
Assigning a form number to an SGL advice	Whenever a deal involving a security with form type SGL is being processed, the system automatically assigns the next available unused form number to the deal. After a number is assigned to a deal, the system displays the following information corresponding to the form number, in the SGL Maintenance screen:
Status	The status will be updated to U (Used).
Deal Reference Number	The reference number of the deal to which the form number is linked.
Trade Date	The Value Date of the deal.
Transaction Date	The actual date when the deal was captured in the system.

Field	Description
Security Id	The security (the Security Code specified at the time of capturing a deal) involved in the deal. NOTE: Users are not allowed to close or delete a record with status 'Used' or 'Canceled'. However, the user can to delete an unused form number before authorization. If the user reverse a deal for which an SGL advice has been generated, the system displays an over-ride saying that the SGL advice for the deal has already been generated. If the user say 'Yes' to the over-ride, the system updates the status of the form number to C (Canceled) in the SGL Maintenance screen. NOTE: After a form number is assigned to a deal, the user cannot reuse the number even on reversal of the deal associated with it.

6.3 List of Glossaries - Printing Subsidiary General Ledger Form - Repo and Reverse Repo Details

SEDXLMT

SGL Maintenance - [6.2 Process SGL Maintenance](#) (p. 231)

7. Annexure A - Accounting Entries and Advices for SR Module

This topic contains the following subtopics:

- 1) [*Accounting entries for SR*](#)
- 2) [*SR Events*](#)
- 3) [*Amount Tags*](#)
- 4) [*Accounting Roles*](#)
- 5) [*Event-wise Accounting Entries and Advices*](#)
- 6) [*Entries for contracts liquidated with Previous Year Adjustment option*](#)

7.1 Accounting entries for SR

This section contains details of the suggested accounting entries that is set up, for the SR module of Oracle Banking Treasury Management.

The details of the suggested accounting entries are listed event-wise.

7.2 SR Events

The following is an exhaustive list of events that can take place during the lifecycle of an SR contract. In the subsequent paragraphs we shall examine the accounting entries and advices for each of the events listed below.

Table 7.1: SR Events

Event Code	Event Description	Remarks
BOOK	Booking a contract (Mandatory)	All Types
INIT	Take-down or Initiation (Mandatory)	All Types
ACCR	Accrual (Mandatory for products with interest payment frequency)	All Types
LIQD	Liquidation (Mandatory)	All Types
CONF	Confirmation of contract	All Types
CAMD	Amendment	All Types
ROLL	Rollover execution (treated as a liquidation + new booking)	All Types
REVC	Reversal (Mandatory)	All Types
RESA	Reversal of Residual Accrual	All Types
REVC	Contract Reversal	All Types
REVN	Rate Revision	All Types
REVP	Reversal of Payment	All Types
STCH	Status Change	Placements
VAMB	Value Dated Amendment Booking	All Types
VAMI	Value Dated Amendment Initiation	All Types
RTFX	Rate Fixing at contract level.	All Types
SMPY	Securities Margin Pay	All types
SMRV	Securities Margin Receive	All types
CMFY	Cash Margin Pay	All types
CMRV	Cash Margin Receive	All types
AMND	Amendment of User Defined Contract	All types
FACR	Fee Accrual	All types

Event Code	Event Description	Remarks
FELR	Fee liquid	All types
NOTC	Billing Notice Generation	All types
SGEN	Settlements Generation	All types
YACR	Yield Accrual	All types

7.3 Amount Tags

The amount tags listed below are hard-coded in Oracle Banking Treasury Management.

Table 7.2: Amount Tag

Field	Description
PRINCIPAL	Principal Amount
PRINCIPAL_DECR	Decrease in principal on amendment
PRINCIPAL_FWD	Forward take-down amount
PRINCIPAL_INCR	Increase in principal on amendment
PRINCIPAL_LIQD	Principal Amount Liquidated
PRINCIPAL_ROLL	Principal Amount Rolled over
PRINCIPAL_XFWD	Principal Amount Reclassified
PRINCIPAL_XREV	Principal Amount Unclassified
ROLLOVER_AMT	Rollover Amount
component_LIQD_CY	Current year Unrealized accrual amount for a component
component_LIQD_PY	Previous year Unrealized accrual amount for a component.
<INTEREST_COMPONET>_ROLL	The outstanding interest is stored in a bridge account
<INTEREST_COMPONET>_LIQD	Interest amount liquidation
<INTEREST_COMPONET>_ACCR	Interest amount Accrual
<INTEREST_COMPONET>_ACQD	Interest amount Accrued amount
<INTEREST_COMPONET>_ADJ	Interest amount Adjustment amount
<INTEREST_COMPONET_DIC_ADJ>_ADJ	Discounted Interest Adjusted
<CHARGE_COMPONET>_CHRG	Charge amount liquidation
<CHARGE_COMPONET>_DISC	Charge Discounted amount
<CHARGE_COMPONET>_PREM	Charge Premium amount
TXN_AMOUNT	Cash margin amount

Field	Description
TXN_AMOUNT_EQ	Cash Margin Equivalent amount
PRINCIPAL_ROIN	This is the principal of the rollover child contract. It equals the amounts of PRINCIPAL_ROLL and <INTEREST_COMPONENT>_ROLL.
LIQD_CY	SR Class
BROKAMT	Brokerage Amount
BROK_DISC	Brokerage Discount Amount
BROK_PREM	Brokerage Premium Amount
<Tax_Component>_AMT	FATCA Tax amount
<Tax_Component>_ESCROW_AMT	FATCA ESCROW amount
EIMDISC_ACCR	Discount Accrual Amount
EIMDISC_ADJ	Discount Adjustment Amount
EIMINTADJ_ACCR	Par Accrual Amount
EIMPREM_ACCR	Premium Accrual Amount
EIMPREM_ADJ	Prem Accrual Adj Amount
In addition to these, define amount tags as per your requirements for interest and charges that is attached to the product.	

7.4 Accounting Roles

In this section, we have provided two separate lists of sample accounting roles. The list I contain accounting roles that are set up for a Reverse Repo product. List II contains samples of accounting roles that apply to a Repo product.

List I – Acct Roles for a Reverse Repo Product

Table 7.3: Accounting Roles

Accounting Role	Description	Role Type
BROKEXP	Brokerage Expense	Expense
BROKPAY	Brokerage Payable	Liability
BROKPIA	Brokerage payable in advance	Asset
ASSETGL	Asset GL for Placements	Asset
FWDASSETGL	GL for Future Dated Placements	Contingent Asset
FWDASSETOFF	Offset for Future Dated Placements	Contingent Liability
INTERINC	Interest Income	Income

Accounting Role	Description	Role Type
INTERRIA	Interest Received in Advance	Liability
INTEREXP	Interest Expense	Expense
INTERREC	Interest Receivable	Asset
PENL1INC	Penal Interest Income	Income
PENL1REC	Penal Interest Receivable	Asset
CHARGINC	Charge Income	Income
ComponentUNRL	Unrealized Income	Income
ROLL_WASH	Bridge account to wash the original parent's outstanding balances to the child contract	Asset
EIMDISCINC	Effective Int Based Disc Accrued Till Dt	
EIMDISCRIA	Effective Int Discount to be Accrued	
EIMINTADJINC	Effective Int Par Income	
EIMINTADJREC	Effective Int Par Receivable	
EIMPREMEXP	Effective Int Premium Expense	
EIMPREMPIA	Effective Int Paid in Advance	

List II – Acct Roles for a Repo Product

This is the list of Acct Roles for a Repo Product.

Acct Roles for a Repo Product

Table 7.4: Accounting Roles

Accounting Role	Description	Role Type
LIABGL	Liability GL for Repo	Liability
FWDLIABGL	GL for Future Dated Repo	Contingent liability
FWDLIABOFF	Offset for Future Dated Repo	Contingent Asset
INTEREXP	Fixed Interest Rate	Expense
INTERPIA	Fixed Interest Rate	Asset
INTERPAY	Fixed Interest Payable	Liability
CHARGEEXP	Common Flat Amt W/o Slab	Expense
TAXCOMP_PAY	Tax payable	Liability

Accounting Role	Description	Role Type
TAXCOM_EXP	Tax Expense	
TAXCOMPAD	Tax Paid	
FRTAXS_PAY	Tax payable role for FRTAXS	Liability
Copy Eff int	accr from repo	
Component REAL*	Realized Income	Income
The 'component' is the ICCB component that is created. NOTE: In the accounting roles listed above the prefixes INTER (Interest), PENL (Penalty), BROK (brokerage), CHARG (Charge) FRTAX1 (Tax) and FRTAXS are ICCB components.		

7.5 Event-wise Accounting Entries and Advices

This topic provides the details of Event-wise Accounting Entries and Advices.

In the subsequent sections, we have defined suggested accounting entries and advices for each of the events in the life-cycle of an SR deal. Samples of accounting entries, advices, and events for four different types of SR deals are:

- SR Reverse Repo with True Discount Interest
- SR Repo with Fixed Discounted Interest
- SR Reverse Repo with Fixed Bearing Interest
- SR Repo with Fixed Bearing Interest

Also note that some of the Amount Tag's linked to the Accounting Roles are user defined.

7.5.1 SR Reverse Repo with True Discounted Interest

This topic provides the details of SR Reverse Repo with True Discounted Interest.

The preferences set for this product are as follows:

- The payment type for this product is of True Discounted type
- Forward dating is allowed for the product
- Brokerage is not payable

7.5.1.1 BOOK: Booking

The following are the accounting entries:

Table 7.5: Book

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr./Cr. Indicator
CHARGINC	CHARG	Credit
CUSTOMER	CHARG	Debit
FWDASSETOFF	PRINCIPAL_FWD	Credit
FWDASSETGL	PRINCIPAL_FWD	Debit
BROKEXP	BROKAMT	Debit
BROKPAY	BROKAMT	Credit

The following are the advice entries:

Table 7.6: Advice

Advice Name	Description
MM_DEAL_SLIP	Deal Slip
SWIFT_MESSAGE	MT320, MT330, MT335, MT350
MMCONPLA	SR Reverse Repo Confirmation

7.5.1.2 INIT: Initiation

The following are the accounting entries:

Table 7.7: Initiation

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr./Cr. Indicator
INTERRIA	INTER_LIQD	Credit
CUSTOMER	INTER_LIQD	Debit
ASSETGL	PRINCIPAL	Debit
CUSTOMER	PRINCIPAL	Credit
FWDASSETGL	PRINCIPAL_FWD	Credit
FWDASSETOFF	PRINCIPAL_FWD	Debit
FWDASSETGL	PRINCIPAL_FWD	Debit
FWDASSETOFF	PRINCIPAL_FWD	Credit
ASSETGL	PRINCIPAL_ROIN	Debit
ROLL_WASH	PRINCIPAL_ROIN	Credit
ASSETGL	PRINCIPAL_ADDL	Debit
CUSTOMER	PRINCIPAL_ADDL	Credit

The following are the advices:

Table 7.8: Advices - Payment Message

Advice Name	Description
MM_CONT_ADV	Contract Advice

7.5.1.3 ACCR: Interest Accrual

This topic provides the details of Accounting Entries:

Table 7.9: Interest Accrual

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr./Cr. Indicator
INTERINC	INTER_ACCR	Credit
INTERRIA	INTER_ACCR	Debit
PENL1INC	PENL1_ACCR	Credit
PENL1REC	PENL1_ACCR	Debit

There are no advices entries.

Any accrual based on negative interest rate or negative amount is done at negative component level. Main interest component continues to support positive interest rate or positive amount based accrual.

Accrual amounts for negative interest component are posted with absolute value. Accrual adjustments retain the sign of the adjustment amount.

Table 7.10: Securities Reverse Repo Deal

Accounting Role	Dr/Cr	Amount Tag
Main Interest CompREC	DEBIT	Main Interest Comp_ACCR
Main Interest CompINC	CREDIT	Main Interest Comp_ACCR
Negative Interest CompEXP	DEBIT	Negative Interest Comp_ACCR
Negative Interest CompPAY	CREDIT	Negative Interest Comp_ACCR

7.5.1.4 Securities Repo Deal

Accounting Role	Dr/Cr	Amount Tag
Main Interest CompEXP	DEBIT	Main Interest Comp_ACCR
Main Interest CompPAY	CREDIT	Main Interest Comp_ACCR
Negative Interest CompREC	DEBIT	Negative Interest Comp_ACCR
Negative Interest CompINC	CREDIT	Negative Interest Comp_ACCR

7.5.1.5 LIQD: Liquidation

This topic provides the details of LIQD: Liquidation.

This topic provides the details of Accounting Entries:

Table 7.11: Liquidation

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr./Cr. Indicator
PENL1REC	PENL1_LIQD	Credit
CUSTOMER	PENL1_LIQD	Debit
ASSETGL	PRINCIPAL_LIQD	Credit
CUSTOMER	PRINCIPAL_LIQD	Debit

This topic provides the details of Advices Entries

Advice Name	Description
SWIFT_MESSAGE	MT320, MT330, MT335, MT350
PAYMENT_MESSAGE	Payment Message

Liquidation amounts for negative interest component are posted with absolute values.

Maintain the following accounting entries for product allowing negative rates for liquidation of the interest amount:

Table 8: SR Reverse Repo Deal- For liquidation of interest

Accounting Role	Dr/Cr	Amount Tag
Customer	DEBIT	Main Interest Comp_LIQD M

Accounting Role	Dr/Cr	Amount Tag
Main Interest CompREC	CREDIT	Main Interest Comp_LIQD
Negative Interest CompPAY	DEBIT	Negative Interest Comp_LIQD
Customer	CREDIT	Negative Interest Comp_LIQD

If you check the 'Net Negative Interest' checkbox at product level, then customer credit or debit leg amounts are netted internally, provided the customer's settlement account is the same for both legs

7.5.1.6 VAMB: Value Dated Amendment Booking

This topic provides the value dated amendment booking.

There are no accounting entries.

The following are advices entries:

Table 7.1: Value Dated Amendment Booking

Advice Name	Description
MMAMDADV	Amendment Advice

7.5.1.7 VAMI: Value Dated Amendment Initiation

This topic provides the Value Dated Amendment Initiation

There are no accounting entries.

The following are advices entries:

Table 7.2: Value Dated Amendment Initiation

Advice Name	Description
SWIFT_MESSAGE	MT320, MT330, MT335, MT350

7.5.1.8 CAMD: Contract Amendment

This topic provides the details of Contract Amendment

There are no accounting entries.

The following are advices entries:

Table 7.3: Contract Amendment

Advice Name	Description
SWIFT_MESSAGE	MT320, MT330, MT335, MT350

7.5.1.9 REVN: Rate Revision

There are no accounting and advices entries.

7.5.1.10 SGEN - Settlement Message Generation

No entries are passed for this event.

Only Payment Message can be maintained for this event.

This is applicable for all types of deals.

7.5.1.11 REVC: Reversal

There are no accounting entries.

The following are advices entries:

Table 7.4: Reversal

Advice Name	Description
SWIFT_MESSAGE	MT320, MT330, MT335, MT350

7.5.1.12 ROLL: Rollover

The following are accounting entries:

Rollover

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr./Cr. Indicator
PENL1REC	PENL1_LIQD	Credit
CUSTOMER	PENL1_LIQD	Debit
CUSTOMER	PRINCIPAL_LIQD	Debit
ASSETGL	PRINCIPAL_LIQD	Credit
CUSTOMER	PRINCIPAL_LIQD	Debit
ASSETGL	PRINCIPAL_LIQD	Credit
CUSTOMER	<Interest_Component>_LIQD	Debit
Interest_componentREC	<Interest_Component>_LIQD	Credit
ROLL_WASH	PRINCIPAL_ROLL	Debit
ASSETGL	PRINCIPAL_ROLL	Credit
ROLL_WASH	<Interest_Component>_ROLL	Debit
Interest_componentREC	<Interest_Component>_ROLL	Credit

Table 7.5: SR Reverse Repo Deal - For Rollover of Interest

Accounting Role	Dr/Cr	Amount Tag
ROLL_WASH	DEBIT	Main Interest Comp_ROLL
Main Interest CompREC	CREDIT	Main Interest Comp_ROLL
Negative Interest CompPAY	DEBIT	Negative InterestComp_ROLL
ROLL_WASH	CREDIT	Negative InterestComp_ROLL

Table 7.6: SR Repo contract

Accounting Role	Dr/Cr	Amount Tag
Main Interest CompPAY	DEBIT	Main Interest Comp_ROLL
ROLL_WASH/Liability GL	CREDIT	Main Interest Comp_ROLL
ROLL_WASH/Liability GL	DEBIT	Negative InterestComp_ROLL
Negative Interest CompREC	CREDIT	Negative InterestComp_ROLL

The following are advices entries:

Table 7.7: Advices

Advice Name	Description
MM_ROLL_ADV	Rollover Advice
SWIFT_MESSAGE	MT320, MT330, MT335, MT350

7.5.2 Cash Margin

The following are event entries:

Table 7.8: Cash Margin - Events

Event Code	Event Description
CMPY	Cash Margin Pay
CMRV	Cash Margin Receive

7.5.2.1 Cash Margin - Accounting Entries

The following are accounting entries:

Table 7.9: Cash - Margin Accounting Entries

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr/ Cr
CUSTOMER_AC (Margin AC)	TXN_AMOUNT	Dr
CUST_AC_OFFSET (NOSTRO)	TXN_AMOUNT_EQ	Cr
CUST_AC_OFFSET (NOSTRO)	TXN_AMOUNT	Dr
CUSTOMER_AC (Margin AC)	TXN_AMOUNT_EQ	Cr

7.5.3 SR Repo with Fixed Discounted Interest

The preferences set for this product are as follows:

- The payment type for this product is of Discounted type
- Forward dating is allowed for the product.
- Brokerage is not payable

7.5.3.1 BOOK: Booking a Repo with fixed discounted interest

The following are the accounting entries:

Table 7.10: Accounting Entries

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr./Cr. Indicator
CHARGEEXP	CHARG	Debit
CUSTOMER	CHARG	Credit
FWDLIABGL	PRINCIPAL_FWD	Credit
FWDLIABOFF	PRINCIPAL_FWD	Debit
BROKEXP	BROKAMT	Debit
BROKPAY	BROKAMT	Credit

The following are the Advices entries:

Table 7.11: Advices

Advice Name	Description
MMBRKCON	Broker Confirmation
MM_DEAL_SLIP	Deal Slip
SWIFT_MESSAGE	MT320, MT330, MT335, MT350
MMCONDEP	SR Repo Confirmation

7.5.3.2 INIT: Initiation of a Repo with fixed discounted Interest

The following are the accounting entries:

Table 7.12: Initiation of a Repo with fixed discounted Interest

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr./Cr. Indicator
Taxcomp_PAY	Taxcomp_AMT	Credit
CUSTOMER	Taxcomp_AMT	Debit
CUSTOMER	Taxcomp_AMT	Debit
Taxcomp_PAY	Taxcomp_AMT	Credit
INTERPIA	INTER_LIQD	Debit
CUSTOMER	INTER_LIQD	Credit
LIABGL	PRINCIPAL	Credit
CUSTOMER	PRINCIPAL	Debit
FWDLIABGL	PRINCIPAL_FWD	Debit
FWDLIABOFF	PRINCIPAL_FWD	Credit

The following are the advices:

Table 7.13: Advices - Payment Message

Advice Name	Description
MM_CONT_ADV	Contract Advice

7.5.3.3 ACCR: Accrual of interest

This topic provides the details of the Accrual of interest - Accounting entries.

Table 7.14: Accrual of interest

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr./Cr. Indicator
INTEREXP	INTER_ACCR	Debit
INTERPIA	INTER_ACCR	Credit
PENL1EXP	PENL1_ACCR	Debit
PENL1PAY	PENL1_ACCR	Credit

There are no Advices entries.

7.5.3.4 LIQD: Liquidation

This topic provides the details of liquidation - accounting entries.

Table 7.15: Accounting entries

Accounting Role	Amount tag	Dr./Cr.Indicator
LIABGL	PRINCIPAL_LIQD	Debit
CUSTOMER	PRINCIPAL_LIQD	Credit
CUSTOMER	INTER_LIQD	Credit
INTPIA	INTER_LIQD	Debit

The following are the advices entries:

Advice Name	Description
SWIFT_MESSAGE	MT320, MT330, MT335, MT350
PAYMENT_MESSAGE	Payment Message
LIQDNOTC	Liquidation Notice

7.5.3.5 VABM: Value Dated Amendment Booking

There are no accounting entries.

The following are the advices:

Table 7.16: Advices

Advice Name	Description
MMAMDADV	Amendment Advice

7.5.3.6 VAMI: Value Dated Amendment Initiation

There are no accounting entries.

The following are the advices:

Table 7.17: Advices

Advice Name	Description
SWIFT_MESSAGE	MT320, MT330, MT335, MT350

7.5.3.7 CAMD: Amendment

There are no accounting entries.

The following are the advices:

Table 7.18: Advices

Advice Name	Description
SWIFT_MESSAGE	MT320, MT330, MT335, MT350

7.5.3.8 REVN: Rate Revision

There are no accounting and advices entries.

7.5.3.9 ROLL: Contract Rollover

The following are the accounting entries:

Table 7.19: Accounting Entries

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr./Cr. Indicator
CUSTOMER	INTER_LIQD	Credit
INTERPIA	INTER_LIQD	Debit
LIABGL	PRINCIPAL_LIQD	Debit
CUSTOMER	PRINCIPAL_LIQD	Credit

The following are the advices:

Table 7.20: Advices

Advice Name	Description
SWIFT_MESSAGE	MT320, MT330, MT335, MT350
MM_ROLL_ADV	Rollover Advice

7.5.3.10 CMPY

The Following are the accounting entries:

Table 7.21: Accounting Entries

Event	Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr/Cr
CMPY	CUSTOMER_AC (Margin AC)	TXN_AMOUNT	Dr
	CUST_AC_OFFSET (NOSTRO)	TXN_AMOUNT_EQ	Cr
CMRV	CUST_AC_OFFSET (NOSTRO)	TXN_AMOUNT	Dr
	CUSTOMER_AC (Margin AC)	TXN_AMOUNT_EQ	Cr

7.5.4 SR Reverse Repo – Fixed Bearing Interest

The preferences set for this product are as follows:

- The payment type for this product is of Bearing type
- Forward dating is allowed for the product.

7.5.4.1 BOOK: Booking

The following are the Accounting entries:

Table 7.22: Accounting Entries

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr./Cr. Indicator
FWDASSETGL	PRINCIPAL_FWD	Debit
FWDASSETOFF	PRINCIPAL_FWD	Credit

The following are the advice entries:

Table 7.23: Advices

Advice Name	Description
MMCONPLA	SR Reverse Repo Confirmation
MM_DEAL_SLIP	Deal Slip
SWIFT_MESSAGE	MT320, MT330, MT335, MT350

7.5.4.2 INIT: Initiation

The following are the Accounting entires:

Table 7.24: Accounting Entires

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr./Cr. Indicator
ASSETGL	PRINCIPAL	Debit
Customer	PRINCIPAL	Credit
FWDASSETGL	PRINCIPAL_FWD	Credit
FWDASSETOFF	PRINCIPAL_FWD	Debit
FWDASSETGL	PRINCIPAL_FWD	Debit
FWDASSETOFF	PRINCIPAL_FWD	Credit
ASSETGL	PRINCIPAL_ROIN	Debit
ROLL_WASH	PRINCIPAL_ROIN	Credit
ASSETGL	PRINCIPAL_ADDL	Debit
CUSTOMER	PRINCIPAL_ADDL	Credit

The following are the advices entries:

Table 7.25: Advices

Advice Name	Description
MM_CONT_ADV	Contract Advice

7.5.4.3 ACCR: Interest Accrual

The following are the Accounting entries:

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr./Cr. Indicator
INTERINC	INTER_ACCR	Credit
INTERREC	INTER_ACCR	Debit
PENL1INC	PENL1_ACCR	Credit
PENL1REC	PENL1_ACCR	Debit
PENL2INC	PENL2_ACCR	Credit
PENL2REC	PENL2_ACCR	Debit

There are no advices entries.

7.5.4.4 LIQD: Liquidation

The following are the Accounting entries:

Table 7.26: Accounting Entries

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr./Cr. Indicator
CUSTOMER	INTER_LIQD	Debit
INTERREC	INTER_LIQD	Credit
PENL1REC	PENL1_LIQD	Credit
CUSTOMER	PENL1_LIQD	Debit
CUSTOMER	PENL2_LIQD	Debit
PENL2REC	PENL2_LIQD	Credit
ASSETGL	PRINCIPAL_LIQD	Credit
CUSTOMER	PRINCIPAL_LIQD	Debit

The following are the advices entries:

Table 7.27: Advices

Advice Name	Description
SWIFT_MESSAGE	MT320, MT330, MT335, MT350
PAYMENT_MESSAGE	Payment Message

7.5.4.5 VAMB: Value Dated Amendment Booking

There are no Accounting entries.

The following are the advice entries:

Table 7.28: Advices

Advice Name	Description
MMAMDADV	Amendment Advice

7.5.4.6 VAMI: Value Dated Amendment Initiation

The following are the Accounting entries:

Table 7.29: Accounting Entries

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr./Cr. Indicator
ASSETGL	PRINCIPAL_INCR	Debit
CUSTOMER	PRINCIPAL_INCR	Credit
ASSETGL	PRINCIPAL_DECR	Credit
ASSETGL	PRINCIPAL_DECR	Debit

The following are the advice entries:

Table 7.30: Advices

Advice Name	Description
SWIFT_MESSAGE	MT320, MT330, MT335, MT350

7.5.4.7 CAMD: Contract Amendment

There are no Accounting entries.

The following are the advice entries:

Table 7.31: Advices

Advice Name	Description
SWIFT_MESSAGE	MT320, MT330, MT335, MT350

7.5.4.8 REVC: Reversal

There are no Accounting entries.

The following are the advice entries:

Table 7.32: Advices

Advice Name	Description
SWIFT_MESSAGE	MT320, MT330, MT335, MT350

7.5.5 REVN: Rate Revision

There are no accounting or advices entries.

7.5.5.1 ROLL: Rollover

The following are the accounting entries:

Table 7.33: Accounting Entries

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr./Cr Indicator
CUSTOMER	INTER_LIQD	Debit
INTER_REC	INTER_LIQD	Credit
ASSET GL	INTER_ROLL	Debit
INTER_REC	INTER_ROLL	Credit
ASSETGL	PRINCIPAL_LIQD	Credit
CUSTOMER	PRINCIPAL_LIQD	Debit
CUSTOMER	PRINCIPAL_LIQD	Debit
ASSETGL	PRINCIPAL_LIQD	Credit
CUSTOMER	<Interest_Component>_LIQD	Debit
Interest_componentREC	<Interest_Component>_LIQD	Credit
ROLL_WASH	PRINCIPAL_ROLL	Debit
ASSETGL	PRINCIPAL_ROLL	Credit
ROLL_WASH	<Interest_Component>_ROLL	Debit
Interest_componentREC	<Interest_Component>_ROLL	Credit

Advices

The following are the advices entries:

Table 7.34: Advices

Advice Name	Description
MM_ROLL_ADV	Rollover Advice

7.5.6 SR Repo with Fixed Bearing Interest

This topic provides the SR Repo with Fixed bearing Interest

The preferences set for this product are as follows:

- The payment type for this product is of Bearing type
- Forward dating is allowed for the product.

7.5.6.1 BOOK: Booking a Repo with fixed bearing interest

The following are the accounting entries:

Table 7.35: Accounting Entries

Accounting Role	Amount tag	Dr./Cr. Indicator
FWDLIABGL	PRINCIPAL_FWD	Credit
FWDLIABOFF	PRINCIPAL_FWD	Debit

The following are the advices

Table 7.36: Advices

Advice Name	Description
MMBRKCON	Broker Confirmation
MMCONDEP	SR Repo Confirmation
MM_DEAL_SLIP	Deal Slip
SWIFT_MESSAGE	MT320, MT330, MT335, MT350
PAYMENT_MESSAGE	Payment Message

7.5.6.2 INIT: Initiation of a Repo with fixed bearing interest

The following are the accounting entries:

Table 7.37: Accounting Entries

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr./Cr. Indicator
Taxcomp_EXP	Taxcomp_AMT	Debit
Taxcomp_PAY	Taxcomp_AMT	Credit
LIABGL	PRINCIPAL	Credit
CUSTOMER	PRINCIPAL	Debit
FWDLIABGL	PRINCIPAL_FWD	Debit
FWDLIABOFF	PRINCIPAL_FWD	Credit

The following are advices

Table 7.38: Advices

Advice Name	Description
MM_CONT_ADV	Contract Advice

7.5.6.3 ACCR: Accrual of interest

The following are the accounting entries:

Table 7.39: Accounting Entries

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr./Cr. Indicator
INTEREXP	INTER_ACCR	Debit
INTERPAY	INTER_ACCR	Credit

7.5.6.4 ROLL: Rollover

The following are the accounting entries:

Table 7.40: Accounting Entries

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr./Cr Indicator
CUSTOMER	INTER_LIQD	Debit
INTER_REC	INTER_LIQD	Credit
ASSET GL	INTER_ROLL	Debit
INTER_REC	INTER_ROLL	Credit
ASSETGL	PRINCIPAL_LIQD	Credit
CUSTOMER	PRINCIPAL_LIQD	Debit
CUSTOMER	PRINCIPAL_LIQD	Debit
ASSETGL	PRINCIPAL_LIQD	Credit
CUSTOMER	<Interest_Component>_LIQD	Debit
Interest_componentREC	<Interest_Component>_LIQD	Credit
ROLL_WASH	PRINCIPAL_ROLL	Debit
ASSETGL	PRINCIPAL_ROLL	Credit
ROLL_WASH	<Interest_Component>_ROLL	Debit
Interest_componentREC	<Interest_Component>_ROLL	Credit

There are no advices for this event.

LIQD: Liquidation

The following are the Accounting Entries:

Table 7.41: Accounting Entries

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr./Cr. Indicator
INTERPAY	INTER_LIQD	Debit
CUSTOMER	INTER_LIQD	Credit
CUSTOMER	PRINCIPAL_LIQD	Credit
LIABGL	PRINCIPAL_LIQD	Debit

The following are the advices entries:

Table 7.42: Advices

Advice Name	Description
SWIFT_MESSAGE	MT320, MT330, MT335, MT350

Advice Name	Description
PAYMENT_MESSAGE	Payment Message

7.5.6.5 VABM: Value Dated Amendment Booking

There are no accounting entries.

The following are the advices:

Table 7.43: Advices

Advice Name	Description
MMAMDADV	Amendment Advice

7.5.6.6 VAMI: Value Dated Amendment Initiation

The following are the accounting entries:

Table 7.44: Repo- Accounting Entries

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr./Cr. Indicator
LIAB GL	PRINCIPAL_INCR	Credit
CUSTOMER	PRINCIPAL_INCR	Debit
LIAB GL	PRINCIPAL_DECR	Debit
CUSTOMER	PRINCIPAL_DECR	Credit

The following are the advices:

Table 7.45: Advices

Advice Name	Description
SWIFT_MESSAGE	MT320, MT330, MT335, MT350

7.5.6.7 CAMD: Amendment

There are no Accounting entries.

The following are the advices:

Table 7.46: Advices

Advice Name	Description
SWIFT_MESSAGE	MT320, MT330, MT335, MT350

7.5.6.8 REVN: Rate Revision

There are no Accounting and advices entries.

7.5.6.9 ROLL: Rollover

There are no Accounting entries:

Table 7.47: Accounting Entries

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr./Cr. Indicator
CUSTOMER	INTER_LIQD	Credit
INTER_PAY	INTER_LIQD	Debit
LIABGL	INTER_ROLL	Credit
INTER_PAY	INTER_ROLL	Debit
LIABGL	PRINCIPAL_LIQD	Debit
CUSTOMER	PRINCIPAL_LIQD	Credit

The following are the advices entries:

Table 7.48: Advices

Advice Name	Description
MM_ROLL_ADV	Rollover advice

7.5.7 Multi Media Support

The Multi Media support for same location and message type is enable in OBTR. The following table describes the Message type and Media details for multi media support.

Table 7.49: Message Types and Media Details for Multi Media Support

Message Type	Description	Media
LIQDNOTC	Repo Liquidation Notice	Fax, Mail, Telex, E-Mail
MKTTRADECONF	Market-Side Trade Confirmation	SWIFT, Fax, Mail, Telex, E-Mail
MMAMDADV	Repo Amendment Advice	Fax, Mail, Telex, E-Mail
MMBRKCON	Repo Broker Confirmation	Fax, Mail, Telex, E-Mail
MMCONDEP	Repo Borrowing Confirmation	Fax, Mail, Telex, E-Mail
MMCONPLA	Repo Placement Confirmation	Fax, Mail, Telex, E-Mail
MM_CONT_ADV	Repo Deal Advice	Fax, Mail, Telex, E-Mail
MM_DEAL_SLIP	Repo Deal Slip	Fax, Mail, Telex, E-Mail
MM_ROLL_ADV	Repo Rollover Advice	Fax, Mail, Telex, E-Mail
MT320	Repo Deal Confirmation	SWIFT, Fax, Telex, E- mail

Message Type	Description	Media
MT335	Call/Notice Rate Change Advice	SWIFT, Fax, Telex
MT350	Deposit Interest Payment Advice	SWIFT, Fax, Telex
SRAMDADV	SR amendment advice	Fax, Mail, Telex, E-Mail
SR_GMRA_ADV	Global Master Repurchase Agreement	Fax, Mail, Telex, E-Mail

7.6 Entries for contracts liquidated with Previous Year Adjustment option

This topic provides the details of the Entries for contracts liquidated with Previous Year Adjustment option.

Need to maintain the following accounting entry set-up when an SR contract is liquidated with previous year adjustment option.

During the liquidation of a schedule/contract, the unrealized accruals for the previous year are liquidated before the liquidation of unrealized accruals for the current year.

For liquidating the interest components the system posts the following entries during Liquidation (LIQD) for a bearing contract:

Table 7.50: Accounting Entries

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr./Cr. Indicator
ComponentREC	Component_LIQD	Credit
Customer	Component_LIQD	Debit
ComponentUNRL	Component_LIQD_PY	Debit
ComponentINC	Component_LIQD_PY	Credit
ComponentUNRL	Component_LIQD_CY	Debit
ComponentINC	Component_LIQD_CY	Credit

If the interest has been collected in advance the following entries are passed:

Table 7.51: Accounting Entries

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr./Cr. Indicator
ComponentUNRL	Component_LIQD_PY	Debit
ComponentINC	Component_LIQD_PY	Credit
ComponentUNRL	Component_LIQD_CY	Debit
ComponentINC	Component_LIQD_CY	Credit

When the Amount Tag is of type component_LIQD_PY and the Accounting Role pertains to unrealized income/expense, the head for the accounting role is replaced by the previous year adjustment GL, while passing accounting entries.

NOTE: In case a contract spans over multiple years, any event (Back dated Rate revision, Principal Change etc, back dated booking of contract etc.,) which causes the accrual balances of the previous year to be recomputed, the accrual entries are posted to the current year unrealized income and expense GL only.

8. Annexure B- Sample Advices

This topic contains the following sample advices:

- 1) [GMRA Advice](#)
- 2) [Money Market Loan Contract Amendment Advice](#)
- 3) [Money Market Deposit Contract Confirmation Advice](#)
- 4) [Money Market Loan Contract Confirmation Advice](#)
- 5) [Credit Advice](#)
- 6) [Debit Advice](#)
- 7) [Rollover Advice For a Placement](#)
- 8) [Fixed Contract Confirmation](#)
- 9) [Deposit Interest Payment Advice](#)
- 10) [Payment Message](#)
- 11) [Credit Advice](#)
- 12) [Debit Advice](#)
- 13) [Market-Side Trade Confirmation](#)

8.1 GMRA Advice

#B

FROM,

BANK-NAME

BRANCH-ADDR

TO,

CUSTNAME

ADD1

ADD2

ADD3

ADD4

DATE: _TDATE_

REFERENCE NO: _REF_

USER REFERENCE NO: _USERREF_

SUBJECT: REPURCHASE TRANSACTION (_CONTREF_)

Dear Sirs,

The purpose of this confirmation (this "Confirmation") is to set forth the terms and conditions of the above-referenced repurchase transaction between _SELLER-NAME_ ("Seller") and _BUYER-NAME_ ("Buyer") on the Trade Date specified below the "Transaction".

This Confirmation supplements and forms part of, and is subject to, the Global Master Repurchase Agreement as entered into between us as of < _VDATE_ > as the same may be amended from time to time (the "Agreement"). All provisions contained in the Agreement govern this Confirmation except as expressly modified below. Words and

phrases defined in the Agreement and used in this Confirmation shall have the same meaning herein as in the Agreement.

BOOKING DATE: _TRDATE_

VALUE DATE: _VDATE_

MATURITY DATE: _MDATE_

CONTRACT CURRENCY: _CCY_

PURCHASED SECURITIES	ISIN	PURCHASE PRICE

#LOOP

SECID, _PRINCIAMT_ _SECID-ISINNO_ at _INPUTPRICE_ for Face Amount _CCY_ _FACEAMT_

#ENDLOOP

#IF _REPO_

BUYER : _CPTYNAME_

SELLER: _BANK-NAME_

#ENDIF

#IF _REVREPO_

BUYER : _BANK-NAME_

SELLER: _CPTYNAME_

#ENDIF

PURCHASE DATE: _VDATE_

WE REQUEST YOU TO ACKNOWLEDGE THE CONTRACT ON THE DUPLICATE

BANK-NAME

AUTHORIZED SIGNATORY

#EB

8.2 Money Market Loan Contract Amendment Advice

Date: 29-DEC-97

Reference Number: 0003P05973630002

FROM,

Bank Futura

79 Strand, Charing Cross, London, WC2R 0DE, United Kingdom

TO,

MORGAN STANLEY

#23,LINCON HIGHWAY

LONDON

UK

LN

WE CONFIRM THAT A MM PLACEMENT 05

HAS BEEN ACCEPTED AS PER THE DETAILED BELOW

BOOKING DATE: 29-DEC-97

VALUE DATE: 01-JAN-98

MATURITY DATE: 15-FEB-98

CALCULATION METHOD: 30[Euro]/365

AMOUNT: 10,000,000.00 GBP

WE REQUEST YOU TO ACKNOWLEDGE THE CONTRACT ON THE DUPLICATE
AMERICAN BANK

AUTHORIZED SIGNATORY

8.3 Money Market Deposit Contract Confirmation Advice

DATE: 28-DEC-07

REFERENCE NUMBER: CM2MBT2073620013

USER REF NO: CM2MBT2073620013

FROM,

Bank Futura

79 Strand, Charing Cross, London, WC2R 0DE, United Kingdom

TO,

MORGAN STANLEY

#23, LINCON HIGHWAY

LONDON

UK

LN

WE CONFIRM THAT A Certificate of Deposit

HAS BEEN ACCEPTED AS PER THE DETAILED BELOW

DEFAULT SETTLE ACCOUNT: 200010

BOOKING DATE: 28-DEC-07

VALUE DATE: 07-DEC-07

MATURITY DATE: 28-DEC-07

CALCULATION METHOD: Actual/365

TENOR: 21

AMOUNT: 100,000.00 GBP

AMOUNT(WORDS): POUND ONE HUNDRED THOUSAND Only

WE REQUEST YOU TO ACKNOWLEDGE THE CONTRACT ON THE DUPLICATE

Bank Futura

AUTHORIZED SIGNATORY

8.4 Money Market Loan Contract Confirmation Advice

Date: 29-DEC-97

Reference Number: 0003P05973630002

FROM,

Bank Futura

79 Strand, Charing Cross, London, WC2R 0DE, United Kingdom

TO,

MORGAN STANLEY

#23,LINCON HIGHWAY

LONDON

UK

LN

WE CONFIRM THAT A MM PLACEMENT 05

HAS BEEN ACCEPTED AS PER THE DETAILED BELOW

BOOKING DATE: 29-DEC-97

VALUE DATE: 01-JAN-98

MATURITY DATE: 15-FEB-98

CALCULATION METHOD: 30[Euro]/365

AMOUNT: 10,000,000.00 GBP

WE REQUEST YOU TO ACKNOWLEDGE THE CONTRACT ON THE DUPLICATE

AMERICAN BANK

AUTHORIZED SIGNATORY

8.5 Credit Advice

DATE: 28-DEC-07

MORGAN STANLEY

#23,LINCON HIGHWAY

LONDON

UK

CUSTOMER ID: CM2000236

ACCOUNT: 200010

OUR REFERENCE NO: CM2MBT2073620013

USER REFERENCE NO: CM2MBT2073620013

WE HAVE EXECUTED THE FOLLOWING TRANSACTION ON YOUR BEHALF:

VALUE DATE CCY AMOUNT

28-DEC-07 GBP 100,000.00

POUND ONE HUNDRED THOUSAND Only

 PRODUCT SLOGAN:-

Certificate of Deposit
 FOR Bank Futura-Capital Market Branch2
 AUTHORIZED SIGNATORY

8.6 Debit Advice

DATE: 28-DEC-07
 MORGAN STANLEY
 #23,LINCON HIGHWAY
 LONDON
 UK
 CUSTOMER ID: CM2000236
 ACCOUNT: 200010
 OUR REFERENCE NO: CM2MBT2073620012
 USER REFERENCE NO: CM2MBT2073620012
 WE HAVE EXECUTED THE FOLLOWING TRANSACTION ON YOUR BEHALF:

 VALUE DATE CCY AMOUNT

28-DEC-07 GBP 100,000.00
 POUND ONE HUNDRED THOUSAND Only

PRODUCT SLOGAN:-

Certificate of Deposit
 FOR Bank Futura-Capital Market Branch2
 AUTHORIZED SIGNATORY

8.7 Rollover Advice For a Placement

MM PLACEMENT 04
 Transaction Date: 01-JAN-98
 Our Reference No: 0003P04983630002
 User Reference No: TC8
 US1009
 516 W 34 St
 New York

NY 10001

THE CONTRACT HAS BEEN ROLLED OVER WITH FOLLOWING DETAILS:

Principal Amount

Old Principal Amount: 12,000,000.00 AUD

Principal Amount: 12,000,000.00 AUD

Value Date: 01-JAN-98

Maturity Date: 04-JAN-98

Tenor: 3 DAYS

INTEREST/FEE DETAILS

Description	Amount	CCY	Rate	Interest Basis
-------------	--------	-----	------	----------------

INTEREST - AUD 13.5* Actual/365-----
*SUBJECT TO CHANGE

Transaction on Initiation

Component	Value Date	Account	Amount	CCY
-----------	------------	---------	--------	-----

Component Description	Account Branch
-----------------------	----------------

INTEREST 01-JAN-98 BNKCUL-US1009-017 8,798.75 USD

MM INT PLACEMENTS 000

YOUR PAYMENT SCHEDULE WILL BE AS GIVEN BELOW

Component	Amount	CCY
-----------	--------	-----

Schedule Date: 04-JAN-98

INTEREST 13,315.50 AUD

PRINCIPAL 12,000,000.00 AUD

SETTLEMENT DETAILS-----

Component	Dr/Cr	Br	Account	CCY
-----------	-------	----	---------	-----

INTEREST R 000 BNKCUL-US1009-017 USD

MMR002_AMT R 000 BNKCUL-US1009-017 USD

PRINCIPAL P 000 BNKCUL-US1009-017 USD

PRINCIPAL_INCR P	000	BNKCUL-US1009-017	USD
PRINCIPAL_LIQD R	000	BNKCUL-US1009-017	USD

8.8 Fixed Contract Confirmation

```
{1:F01ABNANL03AXXX1111111111}
```

```
{2:I320CITIGB44XCM2N}
```

```
{3:{108:CM2MSOG0736501IU}}
```

```
{4:
```

```
:15A:
```

```
:20:CM2MPT2073650142
```

```
:22A:NEWT
```

```
:22B:CONF
```

```
:22C:ABNA030005CIT144
```

```
:82A:ABNANL03XXX
```

```
:87A:CITIGB44CM2
```

```
:15B:
```

```
:17R:L
```

```
:30T:20071231
```

```
:30V:20071228
```

```
:30P:20071231
```

```
:32B:GBP60000,
```

```
:30X:20071231
```

```
:34E:NGBP25,
```

```
:37G:5,
```

```
:14D:ACT/360
```

```
:15C:
```

```
:57A:CITIGB44CM2
```

```
:15D:
```

```
:57A:CITIGB44CM2
```

```
-}
```

8.9 Deposit Interest Payment Advice

```
{1:F01ABNANL03AXXX1111111111}
```

```
{2:I350HSBCGB22XCM1N}
```

```
{3:{108:CM1MSOG07341002C}}
```

```
{4:
```

```
:15A:
```

```
:20:CM1MPT2073380003
```

```

:21:CM1MPT2073380003
:22A:ADVC
:22C:ABNA030005HSBC22
:82A:ABNANL03XXX
:87A:HSBCGB22CM1
:15B:
:30G:20071204/20071207
:32B:GBP60000,
:30V:20071207
:34B:GBP25,
:37J:5,
:14D:ACT/360
:15C:
:57A:HSBCGB22CM1
-}

```

8.10 Payment Message

```

{1:F01FFFFUS00AXXX1111111111}\
{2:I202DDDDEU00XXXXN}
{4:
:20:FF1FTOB282450003 ---Transaction Reference Number
:21:NONREF ---Related Reference
:32A:080901EUR1142,86 ---Value Date, Currency Code, Amount
:52A:BBBBUS00 ---Ordering Institution
:58A:DDDDEU00 ---Beneficiary Institution
-}

```

8.11 Credit Advice

```

{1:F01FFFFUS00AXXX1111111111}
{2:I910CUSTUS00XXXXN}
{4:
:20:FF1FTIC282450015 ---Transaction Reference Number
:21:FF1FTIC282450015 ---Related Reference
:25:60000USD01 ---Account Identification
:32A:080901USD5650, ---Value Date, Currency Code, Amount
:50K:BBBBUS00 ---Ordering Customer
-}

```

Debit Advice

```
{1:F01FFFFUS00AXXX1111111111}
{2:I900CUSTUS00XXXXN}
{4:
:20:FF1FTOC182450033 ---Transaction Reference Number
:21:FF1FTOC282450033 ---Related Reference
:25:60000USD01 ---Account Identification
:32A:080901USD1520, ---Value Date, Currency Code, Amount
-}
```

8.12 Market-Side Trade Confirmation

```
{1:F01FFFFUS00AXXX1111111111}
{2:I292DDDDEU00XXXXN}
{4:
:20:FF1FTOB082450015
:21:FF1FTOB082450015
:11S:202080901
:20:FF1FTOB282450015
:21:NONREF
:32A:080901EUR2600,
:52A:CCCCUS00
:58A:DDDEU00
-}
```

9. Annexure C - Error Codes and Message for Securities

9.1 Error Codes and Messages

This topic describes Error codes and Messages.

Table 9.1: Error Codes and Messages

Error Code	Message
SR-00252	Normal Rate Variance cannot be greater than Maximum Rate Variance
SR-00253	Product is restricted for the Current Branch.
SR-VAM-01	Cannot delete VAMND event from the Contract screen. please delete from amendment screen.
SR_QRY-101	Reference Number \$1 does not belong to this Module
SR-PORT-001	Short position allowed Portfolio \$1 cannot be used for Repo Deal
SR-PRD001	Events BOOK,INIT,LIQD and REVC are Mandatory.
SR-PRD002ACCR	Event is Mandatory if Accrual Required is marked as Yes.
MM-C0715	Repo entry is not allowed for Reverse Repo deal
MM-UPL-920	Field \$1 should not be blank
MM-UPL-921	Invalid Schedule Movement specified
MM-C0712	Reverse Repo entry is not allowed for Repo deal
MM-C0716	Repo entry is not allowed for Reverse Repo deal
MM-MNT00187	In Rollover Tax cannot be applied
SE-MA0167	Block product cannot be blank for a Repo Product
SR-VAM-02	Cannot Amend Rate. Follow Amendment Screen for rate change.
SR-PDPF01	Internal Product cannot be blank if the preference for the securities pledged is selected as Move to Collateral portfolio.
SR-PDPF02	Block Product is not applicable when the preference for the securities pledged is selected as Move to Collateral portfolio.
SR-PDPF03	Block Product cannot be blank if the preference for the securities pledged is selected as Block Securities
SR-PDPF04	Internal Product is not applicable when the preference for the securities pledged is selected as Block Securities.
SR-PDPF05	Reverse Repo related preferences are not applicable for a Repo product.
SR-PDPF06	Repo related preferences are not applicable for a Reverse Repo product.
SR-PDPF07	Bank Buy and Sell product cannot be blank for a Reverse Repo product

Error Code	Message
SR-PDPF08	Margin Product cannot be blank if collateral revaluation preference is selected as Margin Settlement.
SR-PDPF09	Margin Product is not applicable when collateral revaluation preference is selected as Repricing.
SR-PDPF10	Securities Pledged cannot be blank for a Repo Product.
SR-CON-006	Quantity is not inputted in \$1 screen
SRMRGN-018	Collateral portfolio details are not allowed if the preference for the securities pledged is Block Securities
SR-CON-010	Collateral Portfolio, Collateral SK Location, Collateral SK Account are mandatory if Securities Pledged is Move to Collateral at the Product level.
SRMRGN-001	Transaction date cannot be future dated
SRMRGN-002	Margin Type is mandatory to input
SRMRGN-003	Margin is mandatory to input
SRMRGN-004	Cash margin adjustment related details are mandatory to input if the margin type is Cash
SRMRGN-005	Security margin adjustment details are mandatory to input if the margin type is Security
SRMRGN-006	Security margin adjustment details are not applicable if the margin type is Cash
SRMRGN-007	Cash margin adjustment details are not applicable if the margin type is Security
SRMRGN-008	Margin Processing is applicable only if the collateral revaluation preference is Margin settlement
SR-PDPF11	Either security block product or internal bank product has to be configured based on the securities pledged preference in product.
SR-PDPF12	Security bank buy and sell product has to be configured for reverse repo in product
SRMRGN-009	For Reverse repo, only collateral portfolio details are allowed
SRMRGN-010	Margin transaction date cannot be less than value date or greater than maturity date of the repo or reverse repo deal
SR-CON-011	Collateral portfolio related details not applicable if Securities Pledged is Block Securities at the Product level
SR-PDPF13	Principal decrease is supported only for repricing.
SR-PDPF14	Principal decrease is applicable only if the product preference for collateral revaluation is repricing
SR-PDPF15	Principal amendment can be done either to increase or decrease the amount, not both.

Error Code	Message
SRMRGN-011	Margin Receive is not allowed as security \$1 is not available as a collateral for repo contract
SRMRGN-012	Margin Pay is not allowed as security \$1 is not available as a collateral for reverse repo contract
SRMRGN-013	For repo margin call, \$1 cannot be null
SRMRGN-014	For reverse repo margin call, \$1 cannot be null
SRMRGN-015	Insufficient quantity of securities in bank portfolio \$1 to initiate margin pay for repo contract
SRMRGN-016	Insufficient quantity of securities in collateral portfolio \$1 to initiate margin recv for repo contract
SRMRGN-017	Insufficient quantity of securities in collateral portfolio \$1 to initiate margin pay for reverse repo contract.
SR-PDPF16	Repricing is not applicable for maturity date change

10. Function ID - Glossary

CFDFRTCD

Rate Code Definition - [4.10 List of Glossary - RFR](#)

CFDRFRRT

RFR Rate Input - [4.10 List of Glossary - RFR](#)

CFDTRINC

Treasury Interest Class Definition - [4.10 List of Glossary - RFR](#)

MGDCPROD

Margin Product Maintenance - [List of Glossaries - Overview of Repo](#) (p. 204)

SRDPRMNT

Securities Repo product Definition - [List of Glossaries - Overview of Repo](#) (p. 204)

SRDTRONL

Securities Repo Contract Online - [List of Glossaries - Overview of Repo](#) (p. 204)

SESTRONL

Securities Instrument Definition Summary - [List of Glossaries - Overview of Repo](#) (p. 204)

SRDMRTRQ

Margin Transaction Query - [List of Glossaries - Overview of Repo](#) (p. 204)

SRDMRONL

Securities Repo Margin Processing - [List of Glossaries - Overview of Repo](#) (p. 204)

SRSMRONL

Securities Repo Margin Processing summary - [List of Glossaries - Overview of Repo](#) (p. 204)

SRDXVMND

Security Repo VAMI - [List of Glossaries - Overview of Repo](#) (p. 204)

SEDXGLMT

SGL Maintenance - [6.3 List of Glossaries - Printing Subsidiary General Ledger Form - Repo and Reverse Repo Details](#) (p. 233)

SRDPAMIN

Securities Repo Payment Input - [List of Glossaries - Overview of Repo](#) (p. 204)

TRDMRTFX

Treasury Manual Rate Fixing - [List of Glossaries - Overview of Repo](#) (p. 204)

TRSMRTFX

Treasury Manual Rate Fixing Summary - [List of Glossaries - Overview of Repo](#) (p. 204)

CODTRTYP

Static Type Maintenance - [5.6 List of Glossary - SFTR](#) (p. 230)

STDTRCIF

Treasury Customer Additional Maintenance - [5.6 List of Glossary - SFTR](#) (p. 230)

SEDTRONL

Securities Instrument Definition - [5.6 List of Glossary - SFTR](#) (p. 230)

SEDTRONL

Securities Repo Contract Online - [5.6 List of Glossary - SFTR](#) (p. 230)